COMMITTEE ON
POPULATION AND DEMOGRAPHY

Report No. 4

Age Misreporting and Age-Selective Underenumeration: Sources, Patterns, and Consequences for Demographic Analysis

---

Douglas C. Ewbank

Panel on Data Collection
Committee on Population and Demography
Assembly of Behavioral and Social Sciences
National Research Council

NATIONAL ACADEMY PRESS
Washington, D.C. 1981

NOTICE: The project that is the subject of this report was approved by the Governing Board of the National Research Council, whose members are drawn from the councils of the National Academy of Sciences, the National Academy of Engineering, and the Institute of Medicine. The members of the Committee responsible for the report were chosen for their special competences and with regard for appropriate balance.

This report has been reviewed by a group other than the authors according to procedures approved by a Report Review Committee consisting of members of the National Academy of Sciences, the National Academy of Engineering, and the Institute of Medicine.

The National Research Council was established by the National Academy of Sciences in 1916 to associate the broad community of science and technology with the Academy's purposes of furthering knowledge and of advising the federal government. The Council operates in accordance with general policies determined by the Academy under the authority of its congressional charter of 1863, which establishes the Academy as a private, nonprofit, self-governing membership corporation. The Council has become the principal operating agency of both the National Academy of Sciences and the National Academy of Engineering in the conduct of their services to the government, the public, and the scientific and engineering communities. It is administered jointly by both Academies and the Institute of Medicine. The National Academy of Engineering and the Institute of Medicine were established in 1964 and 1970, respectively, under the charter of the National Academy of Sciences.

Library of Congress Catalog Card Number 81-81759

International Standard Book Number 0-309-03141-9

Available from

NATIONAL ACADEMY PRESS
2101 Constitution Avenue, N.W.
Washington, D.C. 20418

Printed in the United States of America

PANEL ON DATA COLLECTION

WILLIAM SELTZER (*Chairman*), Statistical Office, United Nations
LESLIE KISH, Institute for Social Research, University of Michigan
FORREST E. LINDER, International Institute for Vital Registration and and Statistics
SAMUEL H. PRESTON, Population Studies Center, University of Pennsylvania
CHRISTOPHER SCOTT, World Fertility Survey
CONRAD TAEUBER, Georgetown University
JACQUES VALLIN, Institut National d'Etudes Demographiques, Paris
H. BRADLEY WELLS, Population Laboratories, University of North Carolina

ROBERT J. LAPHAM, *Study Director*

COMMITTEE ON POPULATION AND DEMOGRAPHY

ANSLEY J. COALE (*Chairman*), Office of Population Research, Princeton University
WILLIAM BRASS, Centre for Population Studies, London School of Hygiene and Tropical Medicine
LEE-JAY CHO, East-West Population Institute, East-West Center, Honolulu
RONALD FREEDMAN, Population Studies Center, University of Michigan
NATHAN KEYFITZ, Department of Sociology, Harvard University
LESLIE KISH, Institute for Social Research, University of Michigan
W. PARKER MAULDIN, Population Division, The Rockefeller Foundation, New York
JANE MENKEN, Office of Population Research, Princeton University
SAMUEL PRESTON, Population Studies Center, University of Pennsylvania
WILLIAM SELTZER, Statistical Office, United Nations
CONRAD TAEUBER, Kennedy Institute, Center for Population Research, Georgetown University
ETIENNE VAN DE WALLE, Population Studies Center, University of Pennsylvania

ROBERT J. LAPHAM, *Study Director*

NOTE: Members of the Committee and its panels and working groups participated in this project in their individual capacities; the listing of their organizational affiliation is for identification purposes only, and the views and designations used in this report are not necessarily those of the organizations mentioned.

Contents

LIST OF TABLES viii

PREFACE xi

1 INTRODUCTION 1

2 SOURCES OF AGE MISREPORTING 4

The Knowledge of Age 5
Indirect Procedures for Estimating Ages 9
The Interview Process 11
Errors Introduced in Data Processing 16

3 METHODS FOR DETECTING ERRORS IN REPORTED AGE DISTRIBUTIONS 18

Completeness Errors and Content Errors 19
Post-Enumeration Surveys (PES) and Matching of Independent Surveys 21
Comparison of Sources 29
Cross-Tabulating by Age to Identify Age Misreporting 30
Analyzing Cohort Survival Rates 36
Stable Population Analysis 40

4 TYPICAL PATTERNS OF DISTORTION IN REPORTED AGE DISTRIBUTIONS 46

Age Misreporting for Infants, Young Children, and Adolescents 48
Age Distribution Distortions and Underenumeration at Ages 15-29 59
Reporting Errors For Those Over Age 30 66

5 THE EFFECT OF ERRORS ON THE ESTIMATION OF FERTILITY AND MORTALITY RATES: PROBLEMS AND RECOMMENDED SOLUTIONS 70

The Effect of Age Distribution Distortions on Stable Population Analysis 70
Age Misreporting and the Brass "Growth Balance" Technique 74
The Effects of Age Distribution Errors on the Brass Techniques for Estimating Fertility and Child Mortality 74
The Effect of Age Misreporting on the Brass Parental Survival Technique for Estimating Mortality 80

6 CONCLUSIONS AND RECOMMENDATIONS FOR FUTURE RESEARCH 83

Summary 87

APPENDIX: The Usefulness of Historical Calendars 89

GLOSSARY 97

REFERENCES 105

List of Tables

1. Estimated Proportions of Different Age-Sex Groups Omitted from Census Relative to the Overall Undercount: Seven Populations 20
2. Comparison of the Age Distributions from the Census and the Post-Enumeration Survey: Ghana 1960 22
3. Percentage of Persons Enumerated in the Same Five-Year Age Group During a Survey and a Reinterview: Nine Populations 26
4. Age and Sex Ratios for the 1972 Paraguayan Census, With and Without Adjustments for Age-Selective Underenumeration 32
5. Comparisons of Reports of Average Parity and Births in the Last Year by Single Year of Age: Nepal 1976 and Ghana 1971 34
6. Census Survival Ratios Divided by Appropriate Life Table Survival Ratios for Children and Young Adults in the Indian Censuses of 1881-1961: Areas Common to All Nine Censuses 37
7. Ten-Year Census Survival Rates for the Native-Born Population of Ghana, Adjusted for Mortality and Estimated Age Reporting Errors 39
8. Stable Population Analysis of the Reported and Adjusted Age Distributions: Paraguay 1972 42
9. Stable Population Analysis of the Reported and Adjusted Age Distributions: Liberia 1974 44
10. Gross Errors in Reported Ages of Children Aged 0-14, Expressed in Percentages: Ghana, Senegal, and Gambia 50

11. Mean Error in Reported Ages of Children Aged 0-14: Ghana and Senegal 51
12. Adjustment Factors for Net Age Misreporting for Infants: Evaluation Study, 1971 Census of India 52
13. Ratio of the Reported Population Aged x to the Reported Population Aged x + 1 for Ages 0-13: 19 African Censuses 54
14. Simulation of Age Misreporting at Ages 3-14, Sexes Combined: Based on Pison's Study in Senegal 56
15. Estimated Omission Rates of Children Aged 0, 1, and 2: Evaluation Study, 1971 Census of India 58
16. Estimates of Age Misreporting for Ages 15-29: Gambia, Indonesia, and Nigeria 60
17. Percentage of Age Misreporting by Age, Marital Status, and Parity, for Women Aged 15-24: Nigeria 1969 63
18. Number of Ever-Married Women by Age, Number of Surviving Children, and Misreporting of Age: Indonesia 1976 63
19. Percentage Undercount for Ages 12-19: Korea 1970 64
20. Underenumeration of Ever-Married Women by Age and Parity: Korea, 1960 Census 65
21. Percentage Estimates of Completeness of Enumeration by Relationship to Household Head and by Migrant Status: Paraguay and Korea 66
22. Evidence of Digit Preference Among Persons Aged 40-69: Gambia 1971 67
23. Age Misreporting at Ages 30-69: Gambia 1971 69
24. Quasi-Stable Population Tests of Minimal Adjustments for Age Distribution Distortions: Ghanaian Males, 1970 73
25. Estimates of Fertility and Child Mortality Derived from Different Age Groupings: Ashanti Region, Ghana 1971 76
26. Simulations of the Effect of Age Misreporting on Brass Child Mortality Estimates 78
27. Simulation of the Sensitivity of the Brass Parental Survival Method to Age Misreporting 80
A-1. Percentage of Agreement Between Ages Reported in Response to a Simple Question on Age and Ages Estimated by Alternative Approaches: Nigeria 93
A-2. Net Percentage of Respondents Overstating Their Age, Based on Three Age-Estimation Techniques: Nigeria 95

Preface

The Committee on Population and Demography was established in April 1977 by the National Research Council, in response to a request by the Agency for International Development (AID) of the U.S. Department of State. It was widely felt by those concerned that the time was ripe for a detailed review of levels and trends of fertility and mortality in the developing world. Although most people in the demographic community agree that mortality has declined in almost all developing countries during the last 30 years, there is uncertainty about more recent changes in mortality in some countries, about current levels of fertility, and about the existence and extent of recent changes in fertility.

In 1963, a Panel on Population Problems of the Committee on Science and Public Policy of the National Academy of Sciences published a report entitled The Growth of World Population. The appointment of that panel and the publication of its report were expressions of the concern then felt by scientists, as well as by other informed persons in many countries, about the implications of population trends. At that time, the most consequential trend was the pronounced and long-continued acceleration in the rate of increase of the population of the world and especially of the population of the poorer countries. It was estimated in 1963 that the annual rate of increase of the global population had reached 2 percent, a rate that, if continued, would cause the total to double every 35 years. The disproportionate contribution of low-income areas to that acceleration was caused by rapid declines in mortality combined with high fertility that remained almost unchanged: the birth rate was nearly fixed or declined more modestly than the death rate.

Since the earlier report, however, the peak rate of growth in the world's population has apparently been passed. A dramatic decline in the birth rate in almost all the more developed countries has lowered their aggregate annual rate of increase to well below 1 percent, and the peak rate of increase has also apparently been passed in the less-developed parts of the world as a whole. A sharp decline in fertility in many low-income areas has more than offset the generally continued reduction in the death rate, although the rate of population increase remains high in almost all less-developed countries.

The causes of the reductions in fertility--whether they are the effect primarily of such general changes as lowered infant mortality, increasing education, urban rather than rural residence, and improving status of women or of such particular changes as spreading knowledge of and access to efficient methods of contraception or abortion--are strongly debated. There are also divergent views of the appropriate national and international policies on population in the face of these changing trends. The differences in opinion extend to different beliefs and assertions about what the population trends really are in many of the less-developed countries. Because births and deaths are recorded very incompletely in much of Africa, Asia, and Latin America, levels and trends of fertility and mortality must be estimated, and disagreement has arisen in some instances about reasonably reliable methods for estimating those levels and trends.

It was to examine these questions that the Committee on Population and Demography was established within the Assembly of Behavioral and Social Sciences of the National Research Council. It was funded for a period of three years by AID under Contract No. AID/pha-C-1161. The Committee has undertaken three major tasks:

1. To evaluate available evidence and prepare estimates of levels and trends of fertility and mortality in selected developing nations;

2. To improve the technologies for estimating fertility and mortality when only incomplete or inadequate data exist (including techniques of data collection);

3. To evaluate the factors determining the changes in birth rates in less-developed nations.

Given the magnitude of these tasks, the Committee decided to concentrate its initial efforts on the first two tasks; it initiated work on the third task in 1979.

The Committee approaches the first task through careful assessment, by internal and external comparison, and through analysis, by application of methods judged to be the most reliable, of all the data sources available. Each of the country studies therefore consists of the application of a range of methods to a number of data sets. Estimates of levels and recent trends are then developed on the grounds of their consistency and plausibility and the robustness of the individual methods from which they were derived.

The Committee's second task, refinement of methodology, is seen as a by-product of achieving the first. The application of particular methods to many different data sets from different countries and referring to different time periods will inevitably provide valuable information about the practical functioning of the methods themselves. Particular data sets might also require the development of new methodology or the refinement of existing techniques.

In carrying out its first task, the Committee set three criteria for identifying countries to study in detail: that the country have a population large enough to be important in a world view; that there be some uncertainty about levels and recent trends of fertility or mortality; and that sufficient demographic data be available to warrant a detailed study. After a country has been selected for detailed study, the usual procedure is to set up a panel or working group of experts, both nationals of the country and others knowledgeable about the demography and demographic statistics of the country. The role of these panels and working groups, which generally include at least one Committee member, is to carry out the comparisons and analyses required. A small staff assists the Committee, panels, and working groups in their work.

As of early 1981, 162 population specialists, including 89 from developing countries, have been involved in the work of the Committee as members of panels or working groups. The Committee, the Assembly, and the National Research Council are grateful for the unpaid time and effort these experts have been willing to give.

As part of the second major task, and given the importance of data collection in estimating fertility and mortality, the Committee established the Panel on Data Collection, chaired by William Seltzer, a member of the Committee. The specific objective of the Panel on Data Collection is to assist the Committee on Population and Demography in developing recommendations for improving and standardizing techniques for estimating fertility and mortality levels, trends, and patterns in developing nations. To this end, the panel has focused on methods of improving the accuracy, coverage, timeliness, and reliability of such estimates through improvements in the collection of underlying data.

This report is No. 4 in a series produced by the Committee. It is the first report from the Panel on Data Collection. The report reviews the data and conclusions of studies of age misreporting errors, age-selective underenumeration, and the interview process regarding the collection of information on age. The report also reviews techniques used to detect distortions in reported age distributions, and it describes typical patterns of distortion and how these distortions affect demographic estimation procedures.

Age misreporting is only one type of response error that arises in data collection processes. Others include underreporting and misdating of vital events, inaccurate reporting of information on individual and household characteristics, and the failure to include required or requested information. Age misreporting is troublesome, and surprising to some non-demographers. However, other survey and census variables--for example, income--often have even larger errors. More is known about age misreporting than about the errors in most other variables used in survey research--in part because the problem has been studied, albeit not as extensively as many users of demographic data would want, and in part because age has several favorable features that most other variables lack: (1) it increases linearly with time, and hence strong modeling possibilities exist; (2) much is known about age, through certificates and rituals, for example; (3) it correlates to some extent with visible body features; (4) age is not as socially sensitive a variable as some others (for example, abortion, crime, contraception, wealth, income, attitudes) and is thus less sensitive to limitations of data collection processes; (5) a person's age is often better known to other household members than are other variables, and hence it can be reported more easily by proxies; and (6) age is an objective measure, in contrast to attitudes, for example. Thus, although the substantial extent and effects of age misreporting are by no means completely understood, our knowledge about age misreporting as response error is comparatively quite good, and studies of age misreporting may serve as prototypes for the study of other types of response errors.

This report was prepared by Douglas C. Ewbank, Department of Population Sciences, Harvard School of Public Health. The Panel on Data Collection asked Dr. Ewbank to undertake this study, and Panel members have offered comments on earlier drafts. William Seltzer provided the spark that led to the initial design of the study and recommended a number of important references. The staff of the Committee provided help in locating copies of a number of the less accessible references, and the Committee's editor, Katherine Miller, provided a great deal of valuable editorial advice. The report has also benefited from comments and insights provided by members of the Committee and the Assembly of Behavioral and Social Sciences during their reviews of the manuscript. The assistance of the Committee staff in typing the drafts and final copy of the text and tables is much appreciated. Particular thanks are offered to Solveig Padilla and Benita Anderson.

Finally, the Committee and the Panel express sincere appreciation to Douglas Ewbank. As is often the case with reports of this nature, the task grows as it proceeds, and Doug has given generously of his time in drafting, rewriting, and revising this report.

ANSLEY J. COALE, Chairman
Committee on Population and Demography

1 Introduction

Any demographer working with data from developing countries has heard stories about the grey-haired old lady in India (or Nigeria, or Peru) who reports that she is absolutely sure she is either 25 or 69 years old. Although age misreporting, in this form and many others, has plagued demographers for centuries, studies that document the extent and nature of such reporting problems are few and far between. In the late 1960s, two books were published that laid the methodological foundations for studying fertility and mortality in populations for which reliable vital statistics are not available. These milestone books--Manual IV: Methods of Estimating Basic Demographic Measures from Incomplete Data (United Nations, 1967) and The Demography of Tropical Africa (Brass et al., 1968)--both included extensive discussion of the patterns of age misreporting that are common in developing countries.

Since then, the basic methods of estimating fertility and mortality rates from census and single-round survey data have been improved and new similar methods have been introduced. However, little progress has been made toward updating our understanding of patterns of age misreporting and age-selective underenumeration. There have been two studies of the interview process, which provide some insight into the source of the errors (Quandt, 1973; Gibril, 1979); several attempts to measure age misreporting errors (Caldwell, 1966; Scott and

Sabagh, 1970; Caldwell and Igun, 1971; Gil et al., 1971; Gibril, 1975; MacDonald et al., 1978; Pison, 1979, 1980); and a few attempts to measure the age-sex pattern of underenumeration (for developing countries: Park, 1966; for the United States: Marks, 1978; Marks and Rumford, 1978). This report reviews extensively the data and conclusions of these studies. However, these efforts to increase our knowledge of the causes of distortions in reported age distributions have been small in comparison to the opportunities.

For example, two recent studies of age misreporting (Ueda, 1976; Kamps, 1976) use only such gross indexes of misreporting as the Whipples index and the U.N. indexes, which measure the smoothness of the age distribution. They make no attempt to explain the patterns in terms of stable population analysis, census survival, or distortions in other distributions (such as the distribution of women by parity or marital status). Similarly, several recent post-enumeration studies of age misreporting and underenumeration have provided some interesting new data, however they have rarely been tabulated in ways that help us understand why misreporting occurs or how it affects estimation procedures.

It appears that demographers have decided that distorted age distributions are something we will have to learn to live with. The major efforts at remedying the situation have been aimed at improving the design of questionnaires, primarily through the use of historical events calendars, which are used to help respondents date events. (The appendix evaluates in detail experience in using such calendars.) Unfortunately, the use of these calendars is relatively expensive and the evidence of their effectiveness suggests that the results they achieve are not worth the price, except possibly for children.

Chapter 2 of this report reviews what is known about the sources of age misreporting, including respondents' ignorance, interviewer bias, and even simple data processing errors. Chapter 3 reviews the techniques that can be used to study distortions in reported age distributions that are due to age misreporting and to age-selective underenumeration. It includes discussion of post-enumeration surveys, which have been conducted at great expense in several developing countries, as well as stable population analysis and census survival techniques, which are virtually free and underutilized.

It also compares the results from some of these studies by applying both stable population analysis and census survival techniques to data that have been adjusted for underenumeration and age misreporting.

Chapter 4 discusses our current knowledge about the patterns and amount of age misreporting and underenumeration and emphasizes the importance of paying more attention to age- and sex-selective underenumeration. Although it appears that age misreporting is probably the larger problem, selective underenumeration is also significant and may be somewhat easier to eliminate and to measure.

Chapter 5 examines what is known about how distortions in reported age distributions affect estimation procedures and suggests a few approaches for future research. This analysis suggests that age misreporting may set limitations on some of the Brass procedures for estimating fertility and mortality, which are so widely used in demographic analysis.

To date, the constraints of cross-cultural comparison and the small number of studies that directly address the problems make it difficult to generalize confidently about the causes and effects of age misreporting and age-selective underenumeration. However, the available evidence does suggest some promising avenues for further investigation. The final chapter recommends directions for future research and suggests analytical approaches that may prove especially fruitful. The recommendations include making new tabulations of existing data, reviewing the distortions in the 1970 round of censuses, and duplicating a few of the more useful studies in different social settings. There is reason to believe that a slight redirection of current research on the causes of the distortions in reported age distributions can produce practical new approaches to dealing with inaccurate data.

2 Sources of Age Misreporting

An understanding of the sources of age misreporting is a prerequisite to improving age reporting and to adjusting for the effects of misreporting during data analysis. Errors in age reports can occur at many stages of the data collection process, and the remedies and adjustments required depend on the source and the nature of the error.

The whole process of data collection is aimed at collecting certain pieces of information and transmitting them to punch cards or computer tape which can be used for descriptive tabulations and analysis. When the data collection depends on interviews, it is assumed that the person being interviewed has the information the researcher needs. The interview process is designed to extract the needed information and record it. This first record is often coded, reviewed for internal consistency, keypunched, and checked again for consistency before it reaches the form in which it will be used by the analyst (cards, computer tape, or published tables).

Using this concept of the data collection process, we have divided the discussion of sources of age misreporting into four parts. The first section reviews the types of direct knowledge about age that an interviewee might have to offer. The second section describes other information the interviewee might have that can be used to estimate age if it is not known exactly. The third section reviews the interview process and the problems of extracting the information and using it to supply answers to the questions on the interview form. The fourthsection reviews briefly the kinds of error that can arise in the course of transferring the information from interview forms to computer cards or tape.

THE KNOWLEDGE OF AGE

Interviewees generally have some knowledge about their age, although it may be non-numeric. The knowledge ranges all the way from exact age or exact date of birth to the vaguest of generalizations (for example, "old enough to have grandchildren"). Most problems of age misreporting begin with the interviewee's ignorance of exact numbers. This takes two forms: ignorance of one's own age and ignorance about the ages of others about whom questions are asked.

The Problem of Proxy Reporting

In a household interview, there is frequently one respondent who supplies the majority of the information. In societies in which one's own age is not important, the ages of others may seem even less important. In their discussion of age reporting in a Nigerian survey, Caldwell and Igun (1971:292-293) report that even though the interviewers were instructed to see all persons in each household, the only age-sex groups in which at least 50 percent of the persons reported their own age were males aged 15-44 and females aged 15-19. In all other groups the reported age was based in the majority of cases on the reports of a third party or on interviewer estimates. Although it is not reasonable to expect infants to report their own age, it is disturbing to learn that the age reports about middle-aged women are often based on the opinion of "a more literate neighbor or a nephew who tries to be helpful." Quandt's study of transcripts of interviews from the 1971 Moroccan census reports that of those aged 15 and over, 45 percent had their ages reported by other individuals without the help of registration cards or documents (Quandt, 1973:64).

This failure to derive the information on age from the person most apt to have useful knowledge is clearly one source of error. Agarwala has studied age reporting in the Mysore survey in India (1960) in which several methods of estimating ages were tested. He compared the amount of digit preference among ever-married persons for two estimates of age: (1) age reported by the head of household and (2) age reported by the individual himself. The reports of the household heads led to a value of 0.91 on the Myers index of digit preference, whereas reports by the individuals had an index of only 0.75. The difference was larger for males (0.98 as compared to 0.72) than for females (0.86 and 0.79), which is surprising because for males who are household heads the two reports should be equal. The data, based on reports from 46 married couples, show that there might be a slight tendency for the household head to report a higher age for an individual than would the individual.

Uncertainty in First-Person Reports

Although interviewing third parties often yields unreliable estimates of an individual's age, asking the individual directly does not necessarily improve the estimate. In societies in which birth registration is uncommon and in which exact ages are not important, there is often a fundamental lack of knowledge about age. This was clearly expressed by one Moroccan woman in this exchange with a census enumerator (Quandt, 1973:45):

> "What is your age?"
>
> "Who me? Our generation was unrecorded. We didn't have any. No date of birth. Nothing."
>
> "How many (years), how many? Estimate?"
>
> "How am I going to estimate? I have nothing to estimate with. I can tell you that I am 60 years; 70 I haven't yet reached."
>
> "Have you reached 80?"
>
> "I don't think so. Someone who is 80 is . . ."
>
> "You who still have energy, you are 70."
>
> "Perhaps that, perhaps it is correct, sir."

Quandt found many such expressions that indicated the respondent's awareness of his or her own ignorance of exact ages. Phrases such as "I don't know," "perhaps," and "he might be..." were found in the responses of 69 percent of the households in her sample (1973:45). Gibril reports exactly the same types of expressions in his study of recordings of census interviews from Gambia (Gibril, 1979:30). It appears, therefore, that a large part of age misreporting is due to respondents' ignorance of exact ages and dates and that this problem is compounded by third-party reports of age.

The information respondents do have about age takes many different forms. In some cases it is based on birth registration cards or other official documents that provide at least an estimated age for the person at some specific date in the past. This might include school registration documents, work permits, or village register books.

Such sources of information were very important in Morocco. Quandt's reports show that people often responded to the age questions by searching for official documents (Quandt, 1973:45):

> "How old is (your wife)?"
> "Wait, I will look for her identity card."
> "You don't have a paper for her?"
> "Who do I work for, that I would be able to have papers? Look, sir, in these papers if there is something . . ."

As in this case, many respondents seem to take refuge in the official forms, frequently refusing even to report the age and giving the enumerator the document to read for himself. Although these forms may be of questionable validity, they at least provide some basis for an estimate. Since errors in age estimation increase with age (as is demonstrated in Chapter 5), guesses about age made at an earlier date may be more reliable than new estimates.

Documents that provide age estimates can be very misleading, especially when the documents can be valuable to the bearer for such things as obtaining Social Security benefits or deferring a military draft. For example, one doctor in a developing country was convinced he could document a case of a woman who had delivered a baby when she was 65 years old. Although this is possible, it is far more likely that the woman's birth certificate is incorrect. For this reason it may be useful for interviewers to make a note of where and when the documents were issued. Documents may be incorrect due to deliberate falsification of information by the respondent or simply due to uncertainty or lack of knowledge at the time the document was prepared. This is more likely to be a problem when the document represents delayed registration of the event or when proxy reporting is involved. For example, a man obtaining a household registration booklet may be asked the age of his wife. If he replies "don't know," the clerk may guess: the man is 40, so his wife may be 30. If the registration occurred in 1977, the year of the wife's birth is recorded as 1947 in the booklet. Future data collectors may be shown the booklet when asking for age information.

In some cases the respondent appears to know his or her date of birth exactly, but only in terms of a calendar different from the one the interviewer uses. For example, in some Chinese societies, many individuals can give their exact date of birth according to the traditional Chinese calendar but cannot report their age at last birthday according to the Western calendar (Seng, 1959; Saw, 1967; Cho, 1971). Quandt reports that in Morocco some respondents could give their date of birth in Islamic months and years.

A recent study of fertility and mortality in South Korea by Coale et al. (1980:37-40) demonstrates that the failure to convert from the Chinese calendar to the Western calendar during the 1970 census led to distortions in the single-year age distribution. The reason for the distortions is that some Chinese years include 12 lunar months while special "leap" years have 13 months. The situation becomes even more complicated when different events are reported by the same person using different calendars (Scott and Singh, 1980:37).

A similar situation exists when respondents can report the exact date or number of years since an age-related event in their lives. For example, Scott and Sabagh report that in Morocco men often can report the number of times they have observed Ramadan (1970:102). Since this practice is celebrated annually beginning at puberty, this information can be combined with an estimated age at puberty to estimate current age.

Blacker (1965) investigated a similar situation in Kenya where some tribes have elaborate circumcision ceremonies. Although individuals rarely can give the exact year in which they were circumcised, they usually can report the name given to their circumcision group. Since only one group is circumcised each year, it is possible to construct a conversion table relating the names of the circumcision groups to Western calendar years. Using an estimated age at circumcision, these group names can serve as age grades, which make it possible to estimate age for individuals. Although Blacker found the method relatively reliable, he points out that not all tribes have these customs and that local conversion tables would be needed for each small area. A similar institution--the Gambian kafo, or childhood playgroup--was used to estimate age in the Medical Research Council's study of several villages in Gambia (Gibril, 1975:7), and Pison has used circumcision dates in Senegal (1980).

In addition to providing information about such age-related events as puberty rights, individuals generally can provide some information about their approximate age at the time of a specific event. For example, when asked her age in relation to a particular event, one Gambian woman reported, "By then, I was a small girl" (Gibril, 1979:38). It is this kind of information that justifies using local calendars of historical events to help estimate ages. In a less formal way, some respondents use their own personal calendar of events to estimate the ages they report. For example, in the Moroccan census one man reported that a farm laborer living with him was 53 years old because he knew that the man was 30 years old when he came to work on the farm and that he had been there 23 years (Quandt, 1973:47).

Some respondents can provide information only about relative ages within small communities. In a few societies, where there are strict rules regarding the forms of address to be used when speaking to anyone who is older, it is reasonable to expect that such reports of relative ages are generally accurate. In a study of a group of !Kung bushmen of the Kalahari, Howell assigned each member of the study population an age that was consistent with both the information on relative ages and with an age distribution estimated from stable population analysis (Howell, 1979:24-42).

Clearly, in many societies there are people who do not know their own age or date of birth, however most have some information that would be useful in estimating their age at some point in the past. One approach to collecting more accurate age data is to design survey questions that elicit some of this incomplete knowledge of age.

INDIRECT PROCEDURES FOR ESTIMATING AGES

In addition to exact knowledge of age and information about relative ages or a person's age at some time in the past, there is information that can be used to estimate age indirectly. The most important information of this sort relates to the life stage of an individual, for example: can a child walk yet, has a girl had her first menstrual period, has a young woman or man been married yet, do they have children, do they have grandchildren, etc. All of these questions attempt to locate the individual within a natural sequence of life events that generally occur during a relatively fixed period of a few years of age. For example, in most developing countries the mean age at menarche is 14 or 15 years. Therefore, any girl who has had her first period is probably at least 14.

Information of this type apparently is used by interviewers whether or not they are instructed to do so. For example, Quandt quotes an extensive discussion between an interviewer and a local official about whether a woman with a 13-year-old child could be as young as 27 (1973:56-57). The discussion revolves around their perceptions of the age at which women get married and the earliest age at which women bear children. Clearly, interviewers use such characteristics and visible signs of age to determine when a reported age is apt to be unreliable.

Although using data on marital status and parity might be the simplest way to get a reasonable estimate of ages, especially ages of young adults, it is not necessarily advisable. As we will see later, this approach causes grave difficulties when the data are also used to study marriage and fertility. If parity and marital status are used to estimate age, then looking at marital status or parity as a function of age involves circular logic and provides no real information about marriage or childbearing.

In addition to creating problems for analysis, using parity and marital status leads to distortions in the reported age distributions. Caldwell and Igun's studies (1971:299) in Nigeria led them to conclude the following:

> There is a significant tendency amongst 15- to 19-year-old females for marital and parity conditions to affect age enumeration. The single have a somewhat greater chance of having their age understated than overstated, while the married are much more likely to have their ages overstated.

Although this problem rarely has been documented carefully, other authors have repeatedly stressed that this type of bias exists in age data from a number of societies, especially those in Africa and southern Asia (U.N., 1967:21; Krotki and Beaujot, 1975:355).

Agarwala (1960) tested approaches to age estimation that depend on reports of such things as duration of marriage and intervals between births. For example, one simple method of this sort is to estimate the current age of an ever-married woman as the sum of her reported age at marriage and her reported duration of marriage. This estimate might be more reliable than a simple statement of age if the age at marriage in a population has a small variance and if the duration of marriage can be reported relatively well. There is reason to believe that a good estimate of duration is possible, because the duration of marriage is frequently close to the age of the firstborn child, which is easier to estimate than the age of the mother. Agarwala used several similar approaches for estimating the age of other members of the population and determined that such methods do produce reported age distributions with a lower U.N. index of age misreporting than that of simple reports of age. However, he was not able to compare the accuracy of these reports with more reliable estimates, such as those based on comparisons with birth certificates.

THE INTERVIEW PROCESS

In the two previous sections we discussed the kinds of information that are available to interviewers for determining a person's age. The age that is actually recorded on the questionnaire depends on the type of information the interviewer is trained to use, the methods he or she is trained to apply, and the actual procedures followed. It is important to look separately at the techniques that are recommended in training sessions and the techniques that interviewers actually employ.

Questionnaire Design

The first question that faces the designer of a survey questionnaire is whether to ask for reports of age or date of birth or both. This decision rests on a determination of which of the two facts the individuals are more apt to know or which they are apt to report more accurately. Studies done in Chinese societies have shown that it is possible to improve age reporting by asking for date of birth according to the traditional Chinese calendar (Seng, 1959; Saw, 1967; Cho, 1971) and that it is imperative that the reporting system is clearly specified. Gray and Gee studied age reporting errors in several censuses in England and Wales and concluded that asking for date of birth produces better results, with the possible exception of children (Gray and Gee, 1972:110). In the United States, evidence shows that asking for reports of both age and date of birth and then reconciling them for consistency has led to different and less severe patterns of digit preference in the reported age distribution. The 1980 census of the United States included questions on both age and date of birth.

In their review of age reporting in Thailand, Chamratrithirong et al. (1978) discuss the Thai tradition of using the "going-to" age (yang). Their study revealed that in the 1960 census many people responded to the question on "age last birthday" with their age next birthday. This reporting error complicates comparisons between the 1960 census and the 1970 census, which asked for date of birth. In this situation it is clearly advisable to ask for date of birth, since it leads to less confusion.

When techniques for estimating ages are recommended (e.g., events calendar, use of parity, etc.), it is important that the question asked matches the recommended technique. Some estimation techniques produce estimates of age and some produce estimates of date of birth. The recommended techniques must be compatible with the question asked so that interviewers do not have to convert from one to the other, which introduces an additional opportunity for error. For example, the General Report of the 1960 census of Ghana showed that the questionnaire asked for "age last birthday" because this "could be worked out, if special efforts were made, by recourse to national historical events, local events, family age relationships and other devices, and, as a last resort, looking at the respondent and guessing his age from his physical appearance" (Ghana Census Office, 1964:113). However, in a survey or census in which age reports are frequently based on birth registration cards, work permits, or civil registration books, asking for age instead of birth date requires the respondent or the interviewer to calculate the age from the birth date, which introduces an unnecessary chance for error (Beaujot, 1977:15).

Interviewers and Interviewing Practices

After the decision has been made about which questions to ask and which methods to teach to the enumerators, accurate reporting depends on how well the enumerators conduct the interviews. By comparing the ages stated in transcripts of the tape recordings of Gambian census interviews with the ages recorded by interviewers on the questionnaires, Gibril concluded that 25 percent of the respondents have had their stated ages either over- or understated by interviewers. He emphasizes that these shifts "represent only the differences between the ages estimated at the interview and those recorded by interviewers. They therefore reflect the interviewer's influence in age recording. This influence is quite separate from whatever influence the interviewer already might have had on the age estimated during the interview" (1979:63). After comparing the reported age distribution with a stable model, he concluded that the evidence suggests that "interviewers in recording ages amplify the distortions that are already present in the estimated ages" (1979:69). His study suggests that the enumerators in Gambia were more apt to influence the age of females than males and that they tended to exaggerate the number of women over age 20. He suggests that this bias is almost certainly due to interviewers' reliance on a woman's parity as the basis for estimating her age (1979:69).

Estimating ages in a population of people who have little or no knowledge of their age can be exceedingly frustrating. Any system of estimating ages can break down if the interviewers begin to feel that it does not work or that it is not worth the effort. Gibril reports that interviewers in Gambia tended to avoid the historical calendars because they were difficult to use and respondents were often unwilling to cooperate (1979:36). Scott and Sabagh also found this problem in the first round of the 1961-1962 Multi-Purpose Survey in Morocco (1970:95).

There appears to be a tendency for enumerators to stick to one method of estimating ages. The method they use depends not only on their training, but also on which method they think is the easiest or most reliable. Quandt (1973:56) drew the following conclusion from her studies in Morocco:

> There is some indication that the enumerator's acceptance of the civil registration card or identification card as the correct age depended on the prevalence of cards in the area. Where civil registration cards were rare, there was a hesitancy to break the routine of giving a number by reading a paper. Where cards were numerous, the routine procedure became that of reading the cards.

Scott and Sabagh report witnessing an interview with an educated woman who clearly knew her age, however the enumerator insisted on using an historical calendar to estimate her age. His estimate was off by 15 years because of a confusion between two events (1970:104).

Several WFS surveys have tested the use of an "event chart" to improve the reporting of dates of events by making it easier for the interviewer to discover inconsistencies among reported dates (Scott and Singh, 1980:34-35). By marking each event on a time line, the interviewer can visually check the intervals between births and compare the marriage history and the birth history.

The strength of routine practices and the frustration of constantly facing the problem of getting age estimates is shown clearly in an interview reported by Quandt (1973:122): A woman offers to get her identity card before reporting her age. The interviewer is impatient and demands that she estimate her age. The woman responds, "An estimate is false." The interviewer replies, "That's all, madam. We have a false estimate. We have made an estimate for [your husband]. You must give one for yourself. Estimate and tell us your age." Quandt concludes that "[the enumerator's] task is to fill in a form for each household in his district. . . . His immediate task is to have a number which can be recorded in the blank in front of him. . . . An enumerator's attitude is one of expedience" (1973:54).

Gibril's conclusion about the role of the enumerator is more charitable. He concludes: "On the whole it seems that interviewers do to some extent make an effort to arrive at 'reasonable' ages" (1979:39). In fact, some of Quandt's examples show that the interviewers do attempt to get reasonable estimates, as in the case cited above of the 27-year-old woman with a 13-year-old child.

Although interviewers probably try to get a reasonable estimate of each person's age, they can also have a profound effect on the exact age that is reported. For example, Quandt reports many interviews in which the enumerator suggested possible ages and the respondent merely picked one of the suggested ages (1973:45, 47, 51). In addition, she notes that the enumerators occasionally rounded the numbers that were reported, as in the case of a child who was "not yet a year" being recorded as age 1. The following exchange shows how inflexible enumerators can be (1973:58):

> "How old is your mother?"
> "Forty-six."
> "Forty-five?"
> "Forty-six."
> "Forty-five; forty-five or fifty."
> "Forty-five."

For some reason the interviewer has decided that this woman is not 46 and nothing the respondent says will change his mind.

A careful estimation of ages requires time, flexibility, and patience on the part of interviewers. Training can easily provide a battery of estimation techniques and scheduling can offer time, but flexibility and patience are more difficult to instill in interviewers.

Since a large proportion of age misreporting errors arise through the interview process, the exact causes of errors and their nature depend heavily on the specific characteristics of the population and the survey. In particular, the training of interviewers, their level of education, and their ability to understand and pursue the interests of the researcher will significantly affect the quality of the data. For example, a recent study of the 1973 Tanzanian census results (Ewbank and Hogan, n.d.) shows that the most important factor in determining the smoothness of the age structure was the educational level of the interviewer. (Some other ways in which interviewers influence the quality of the age data collected are discussed in the appendix.) Although many researchers provide anecdotes about the interview process, only Quandt and Gibril provide careful analyses of interviews. These two studies provide us with valuable information, although it is important to recognize that they deal with only two cultures, two censuses, and two sets of interviewers. It is therefore risky to apply their conclusions to other cultures and other surveys. However, their studies and the other research quoted above indicate clearly the wide variety of potential sources of error.

ERRORS INTRODUCED IN DATA PROCESSING

Once the data have been collected they must be processed before analysis can begin. At this stage there are several ways in which errors can be made. First, errors can occur any time the data are transferred from one form to another, for example, during coding or keypunching. In the 1960 U.S. census about 10 percent of the undercount and 40 percent of the overcount were caused by data processing errors (Steinberg, 1966). Second, errors arise when missing values are replaced by statistical procedures, as in attribution of characteristics, or when data-cleaning procedures reject individuals whose characteristics are in fact very different from the norm. A third source of error is the loss of data or the specious inflation of data through double counting of some questionnaires, which is not apt to affect the age distribution because the errors introduced are random. Finally, errors can arise during tabulation of the results.

Although all four of these problems occur in almost every survey, there is little documentation of them. Two studies of data processing errors in the U.S. censuses of 1950 (Coale and Stephan, 1962) and 1960 (Akers and Larmon, 1967) have demonstrated how processing errors can distort analysis even when those errors are very rare. Rare processing errors are most important when they change the reported characteristics of an individual so that he or she moves from a very large category to a small category. For example, in the 1950 U.S. census a slight error in keypunching could turn a white child of the head of the household into a male Indian. Although this error occurred for only about one ten-thousandth of the white children of household heads, it was responsible for the "creation" of 15 percent of the male Indians in the age group 10-14 (Coale and Stephan, 1962:344-5). Similar errors in the 1960 census caused large proportional increases in other numerically small categories. Although this type of problem has rarely been documented, it probably is responsible for some of the reports of very-high-parity women aged 15-19 that appear in many censuses from developing countries. For example, a common keypunching error--typing a "1" in place of a "4," or vice versa--can transform a 47-year-old mother of six into an apparently very precocious 17-year-old.

Another common error that arises during data processing is the confusion of blanks and zeros. Although this is a well-known problem, it still occurs. A similar problem can arise when a code for "unknown" or "not reported" is accidentally included in the open-ended category. For example, this can happen with age when a code of 99 is used to indicate persons whose age is unknown; a simple processing error can include these observations in the last age group, for example, 75 and over.

The best way to reduce the effect of processing errors is to use data-cleaning programs, designed to spot illegal codes and unreasonable combinations of variables. However, despite their efficiency in dealing with large data sets, cleaning programs themselves introduce errors. For example, there may be an 18-year-old woman who has had four live births (perhaps two sets of twins). This is such an unlikely occurrence that a data-cleaning program would undoubtedly either replace her parity with an estimated value or mark the record for reprocessing. In either case this unusual observation might be lost. A drawback of data cleaning is that it eliminates some real cases that are unusual but cannot identify errors that create "typical" cases.

3 Methods for Detecting Errors in Reported Age Distributions

Knowing that an age distribution is distorted and knowing exactly what the distortions are constitute two very different things. There are five basic approaches to detecting distortions in age data. The first is to try to detect errors in individual reports by reinterviewing individuals, possibly using improved age-estimation techniques, or by matching the responses of two independent surveys. A second approach is to compare the age reported by individuals in a survey with the age reported for those individuals elsewhere, for example, to make a case-by-case comparison with civil registers or birth certificates. A third approach is to examine the age distributions of various groups in the population for signs of unexpected differences in their characteristics; for example, one can use age-specific sex ratios to compare the age distributions of the two sexes. A fourth approach is to compare the age distributions reported for the same population in two different censuses. If the population is closed to migration, then the reported size of a cohort at two censuses will reveal changes that are due both to mortality and to relative errors in the two censuses. A final approach is to compare the reported age distribution to an expected distribution. This may mean comparing the distribution with that of an appropriate stable population or simply looking at the smoothness of the age distribution.

Each of these five approaches provides different information about age misreporting. For example, some of the techniques fail to distinguish between age reporting errors (content errors) and errors of undercounting (completeness or coverage errors). They also differ in their degree of sensitivity to content errors. For example, some techniques are sensitive only to net reporting errors, that is, errors that remain after some errors have canceled each other out.

The following discussion reviews the differences between content and completeness errors and between net and gross content errors, then evaluates each of the five approaches to detecting and measuring errors in age distributions.

COMPLETENESS ERRORS AND CONTENT ERRORS

The task of estimating the extent of age misreporting is complicated by the fact that reported age distributions are also distorted by omission (and, less frequently, by double counting) of the populations in various age groups. Often it is difficult to tell the extent of each kind of error. There are several reasons for trying to distinguish between these two problems. First, if we want to improve the survey procedures in future censuses and surveys, it is important to know which sources of error are most critical; second, different kinds of analysis are sensitive to different kinds of errors; and third, techniques for adjusting data are often based on assumptions about the reasons for the errors (for example, van de Walle, 1968).

Table 1 presents estimates of the relative undercounts by age and sex from seven post-enumeration studies in five different countries. It is clear from this table that the reported age distributions from these studies are affected greatly by differences in the completeness of data for different age groups. It appears that there is generally severe undercounting of males aged 15-29 and females aged 15-24, the same groups whose ages might be misreported because of reliance on marital status and parity in estimating of ages. In most of the populations in Table 1 there was relative overcounting (that is, less undercounting) of both sexes over age 35. This would lead to the same kind of age distribution distortions that would be caused by exaggeration of ages of persons over age 25. Since completeness errors like these can be

TABLE 1 Estimated Proportions of Different Age-Sex Groups Omitted from Census Relative to the Overall Undercount: Seven Populations

						U.S. 1960	
Age	Korea 1960	Korea 1970	Liberia 1974	Malaysia 1970	Paraguay 1972	Whites	Non-Whites
Females							
0	--	6.6	3.6	--	--	--	--
1-4	--	-0.8	5.9	--	--	--	--
0-4	1.5	0.7	5.4	0.4	0.7	-0.4	-1.8
5-9	-1.5	-1.7	1.1	-0.4	-2.6	0.0	-3.6
10-14	-0.8	-1.8	-0.7	-0.2	1.1	-0.1	-4.2
15-19	3.3	3.7	3.8	0.6	4.0	0.8	2.2
20-24	4.1	4.6	-0.5	-0.3	7.4	0.8	1.6
25-29	0.2	0.9	-2.8	-0.1	1.2	-0.2	0.7
30-34	-1.9	-1.9	-2.5	-1.4	-1.6	-1.0	-2.4
35-39	-2.3	-2.2	-3.4	-1.8	-4.3	-1.8	-2.1
40-44	-2.9	-2.2	-5.3	-1.9	-3.1	-1.8	-1.8
45-49	-3.4	-2.0	-1.6	-1.1	-5.3	-0.9	0.3
50-54	-2.0	-1.3	-2.5	-0.0	-2.7	2.6	11.0
55-59	-2.5	-2.3	-3.0	0.7	-2.3	0.0	2.1
60-64	-0.7	-0.4	3.8	1.1	-4.6	2.6	6.5
65+	0.0	4.8	-2.6	6.4	-0.3	0.5	4.5
Overall Coverage	95.6	95.0	88.8	96.3	91.6	98.4	91.9
Males							
0	--	3.0	3.6	--	--	--	--
1-4	--	-0.5	0.9	--	--	--	--
0-4	0.6	0.3	1.3	-0.6	0.9	-0.8	-3.6
5-9	-1.6	-2.3	0.4	-1.1	-2.6	-0.4	-5.8
10-14	-2.2	-1.8	0.6	-0.7	-2.6	-0.3	-6.4
15-19	1.2	3.5	6.1	1.2	3.9	1.0	1.8
20-24	5.7	6.6	2.8	2.2	7.1	1.5	7.4
25-29	4.2	4.7	0.4	0.6	6.5	1.4	9.9
30-34	0.7	-1.1	0.1	0.8	0.9	0.3	8.0
35-39	-2.9	-1.6	0.7	-1.0	-1.5	-0.3	4.0
40-44	-4.1	-3.1	-3.5	-1.5	-3.2	-0.9	2.1
45-49	-2.6	-3.3	-3.6	-1.1	-2.6	-1.2	0.7
50-54	-4.1	-3.4	-5.2	-1.4	-6.1	0.8	7.7
55-59	-1.9	-2.4	-7.3	-0.4	-4.2	-2.4	-5.6
60-64	-3.3	-4.3	-3.7	0.4	-0.3	0.2	-1.3
65+	-0.9	8.9	-4.4	4.4	-3.9	1.0	-10.2
Overall Coverage	94.7	95.0	89.2	95.6	90.6	97.2	89.1

Note: The table entries are 1 - $[\mu(x)/\mu]$, where μ = overall coverage for the sex and $\mu(x)$ = coverage at age x. A positive value therefore indicates a relative undercount for the age group.

Sources: Korea 1960: Park, 1966. Korea 1970: Unpublished tabulations from the 1970 PES. Liberia: Marks and Rumford, 1978: 191. Malaysia: Chander, 1973. Paraguay: Marks, 1978:177-179. United States: National Research Council, 1972:28.

responsible for distortions similar to those frequently caused by age misreporting, it is important to explore the extent to which the distortions in age distributions might be due to differentials in the completeness of reporting of various age-sex groups.

In examining the impact of content errors on various estimation techniques it is important to distinguish between net and gross errors. Gross errors are the errors made in the individual responses, whereas net errors are the errors in the reported numbers of individuals in each age group after some of the errors have canceled each other out. Some uses of data--for example, stable population analysis--are insensitive to gross errors in age reporting, whereas the Brass techniques for estimating fertility and child mortality might be sensitive to gross errors in age reporting if they are correlated with parity or marital status. In the discussions that follow, we will examine the effectiveness of each of the five main techniques for studying age misreporting, noting the extent to which each method reveals content errors and completeness errors and whether it reveals anything about the gross errors.

POST-ENUMERATION SURVEYS (PES) AND MATCHING OF INDEPENDENT SURVEYS

One approach to testing the validity of ages reported in a census or survey is to send better-trained interviewers, with better tools for estimating ages, to reinterview a sample of the population. By matching the responses from the reinterview with the original census forms it is possible to measure the prevalence of age reporting errors. This can also be accomplished by matching the responses of two independent surveys, which has the advantage of simultaneously producing estimates of both content and completeness errors. Errors of completeness are estimated by looking at the proportion of respondents who were enumerated in only one of the two interviews but should have been interviewed twice. Another advantage of this technique is that it produces estimates of both gross and net content errors.

One of the few large-scale post-enumeration surveys to produce estimates of age misreporting for a national census is the 1960 post-enumeration survey of Ghana. In retrospect it is clear that the sample design was far too

TABLE 2 Comparison of the Age Distributions from the Census and the Post-Enumeration Survey: Ghana 1960

Part A. Comparison of Gross and Net Errors and Age Ratios by Sex

Census Age	Males				Females			
	% Reported in Same Age Group in PES (Gross Errors)	Ratio of PES to Census (Net Errors)	Age Ratio[a]		% Reported in Same Age Group in PES (Gross Errors)	Ratio of PES to Census (Net Errors)	Age Ratio[a]	
			Census	PES			Census	PES
0-4	86.7	0.99	--	--	86.9	1.02	--	--
5-9	76.0	1.04	115.9	116.4	71.9	0.98	111.4	106.8
10-14	65.5	1.10	89.9	101.3	71.3	1.03	93.5	100.2
15-19	53.4	0.82	80.5	60.1	56.5	0.92	64.5	60.8
20-24	56.3	1.09	82.5	98.2	50.6	0.91	120.4	109.7
25-29	48.3	1.01	116.4	114.8	44.4	1.06	107.9	120.1
30-34	40.5	0.96	106.2	102.9	36.3	0.99	108.6	103.1
35-39	33.0	0.97	95.9	89.6	35.0	1.03	78.6	87.6
40-44	37.9	1.16	94.7	120.2	32.5	0.82	130.2	101.3
45-49	30.2	0.84	104.1	77.8	24.6	1.09	75.4	97.2
50-54	36.5	1.08	105.3	127.3	26.4	0.89	129.2	98.5
55-59	32.8	0.98	92.4	86.8	20.2	1.36	62.6	77.7
60-64	30.8	0.98	101.3	108.8	41.5	1.49	134.0	149.8

Part B. Summary Measures

	Census	PES
Age Ratio Scores[b]		
Males	9.44	14.94
Females	22.27	14.11
Sex Ratio Scores[c]	27.72	20.22
U.N. Combined Scores[d]	114.87	89.71

[a] The age ratios are 100 times the ratio of the number in the age group to the average of the adjoining age groups.

[b] The age ratio score is the average of the absolute values of the deviations of the age ratios from 100.

[c] The sex ratio score is the average absolute value of the deviations from 100 of the 13 age-specific sex ratios.

[d] The U.N. combined score is three times the sex ratio score plus the two age ratio scores.

Source: Based on Ghana, 1964:391-392.

ambitious; however, despite the numerous difficulties that plagued the matching, the survey did produce estimates of age misreporting. (For a discussion of the problems encountered in running the survey, see Gil et al., 1971:xxi-xxvi.)

Table 2 presents estimates of the net and gross errors in the age reports for individuals recorded and matched in a census and PES in Ghana. For both sexes the proportion of individuals reported in the same five-year age group at both interviews is very low. Of women aged 45-59, less than 25 percent were recorded in the same age group both times. The net errors, however, are not nearly so large. In only four age groups for men and four for women do the net errors reach 10 percent or more.

Table 2 also includes age ratios for the census and the PES age distributions. These ratios compare the population in an age group with the average of the populations in the two adjoining age groups. The age ratios for men show improvements in the PES at only a few ages (10-14 and 20-34), and the overall age ratio score (a measure of the smoothness of an age distribution) is much worse for the PES than for the census. For females, the PES distribution is smoother than the census, however the PES age ratio score for females is still very high. An examination of the sex ratio suggests that the PES is better than the census, although once again the PES score is still very high, 20.22.

The Ghanaian PES shows clearly that the unreliability of the reported ages is exceedingly high; however, it is not clear whether the PES age distribution is really more accurate than the original census distribution. Marks and Waksberg (1960) have come to a similar conclusion for the United States, based on their analysis of the PES of the 1960 census. We will compare the census and PES distributions using some other tests when we discuss the census survival technique for detecting age reporting errors.

Because it appears that the PES approach may be most useful for estimating the unreliability of reported ages, it is helpful to look at measures of the reliability of age reporting derived from several reinterview schemes. Table 3 presents the simplest measure of consistency: the percentage reported in the same five-year age group during two separate surveys. (These comparisons take into account the aging of the population between the dates of the surveys.) Using the average percentage for the age groups 25-49 as an index of overall consistency, we see that the degree of consistency varies from 30 percent for Gambia to about 95 percent for the U.S. in 1960. In every case the consistency of age reporting decreases with age, so that by the age group 30-34 the percentage reporting a different age is at least two or three times as large as at ages 0-4.

The reasons for this decreasing consistency with age are easy to surmise. First, during childhood and adolescence the physiological changes that occur with age are very noticeable and provide valuable clues for estimating age. With increasing age, these visible signs become less precise. Second, since the births of children are much more recent, memories of birth dates and of events that were concurrent with the births are much more apt to be accurate. Third, in many countries the registration of births has increased substantially during the last 30 years and parents of young children are more apt to have birth certificates, which aid in reporting the ages of children.

Table 3 includes two separate estimates of the reporting errors in the U.S. census of 1960. It is useful to note that the estimates from the match with the Current Population Survey almost always indicate more misreporting than does the match with the post-enumeration survey. This finding highlights the fact that even in well-run surveys, the estimates of misreporting are sensitive to the study design, especially the sampling techniques.

Compared with other analytical approaches, such as the census survival techniques and stable population analysis, the PES approach to estimating age misreporting is very expensive. Because of the high costs of the reinterviewing and matching, it is important to weigh these costs against the potential benefits. The values of the process will depend on whether the reinterview is designed solely to estimate the errors in the original interviews or whether it is designed to collect more detailed information to supplement the original survey.

In discussing the benefits of PES studies, Marks (1978:160) has concluded the following:

> While the PES form of dual-system estimation will often give valuable clues on content bias, a PES usually gives adequate measures only for the variance component of content error. That is, in spite of earlier optimism about improving reports of age, income or occupation by doing a more

TABLE 3 Percentage of Persons Enumerated in the Same Five-Year Age Group During a Survey and a Reinterview: Nine Populations

Age in the More Accurate Survey	Medical Research Council, Gambia[a]	Ghana 1960[b]	Rawalpindi, Pakistan 1971	Korea 1960	World Fertility Survey Indonesia Females[c]	Nigeria 1973-74	U.S. 1950	U.S. 1960		U.S. 1970
								Reinterview	Current Population Survey	
0-4	89	86.0	80	94	--	--	97.0	98.2	96.4	93.1
5-9	81	73.0	73	92	--	--	97.9	97.6	96.1	96.1
10-14	66	65.0	69	90	--	--	96.9	98.1	96.6	96.1
15-19	57	63.5	63	89	93	77	97.0	96.8	95.5	95.8
20-24	41	54.0	53	90	90	60	95.3	96.2	93.3	94.6
25-29	42	45.0	52	89	92	40	94.3	97.5	95.0	94.0
30-34	36	39.5	41	89	85	27	93.2	95.9	93.3	91.3
35-39	24	34.0	34	86	88	41	93.4	95.4	93.2	91.2
40-44	28	36.5	30	88	79	24	92.4	92.9	92.8	91.5
45-49	19	29.5	36	86	81	28	90.5	92.8	93.6	92.5
50-54	33	32.0	29	87	--	--	89.5	92.8	89.4	92.1
55-59	20	24.5	10	87	--	--	88.9	94.9	90.2	91.8

60-64	30	29.5	32	--	--	--	91.5	89.5	90.4	89.6
65-69	8	27.5	7	--	--	--	91.0	93.5	94.2	88.0
70-74	24	30.0	39	--	--	--	90.7	89.6	88.4	91.3
75+	58	63.0	47	--	--	--	94.5	93.6	90.1	94.0
Average for 25-49	29.8	36.9	38.6	87.6	85.0	32.0	92.8	94.9	93.6	92.1

---

[a] Under age 22, the match compares the census with the birth registration system organized by the Medical Research Council. Over age 22, the match is with the year of birth derived from annual surveys during the previous 22 years.

[b] Average of the values for the two sexes.

[c] These percentages compare the original age report with the best age estimate after interviews to reconcile differences between the original interview and the reinterview. Therefore, they differ from the published results, which compare the original interview with the reinterview.

Sources: Gambia: Gibril, 1979. Ghana: Ghana, 1964:389. Rawalpindi: Kenya, 1976:12. Korea: Park, 1966. Indonesia: Unpublished tabulations. Nigeria: Andoh, 1980:8. U.S. 1950: U.S. Bureau of the Census, 1960:27. U.S. 1960: U.S. Bureau of the Census, 1974:10 and 1975a:9. U.S. 1970: U.S. Bureau of the Census, 1975b:21.

> intensive interviewing job, PES reports of these characteristics are usually not better than census reports.

He therefore recommends that these surveys be designed to maximize the information gained about completeness.

There are several factors that will affect the likelihood that a PES can produce better age estimates. First is the quality of the original interviews, which can be judged by the training given to the interviewers, the techniques at their disposal (for example, did they have properly prepared historical calendars), the time allotted for each interview, and the amount of careful supervision.

A second consideration is the population's awareness of ages. If the population has little or no awareness of age (for example, if there are reports of 25-year-old grandmothers), then a reinterview using more elaborate interviewing techniques might improve the reporting.

A third factor that affects the value of a PES is the quality of the matching. A low proportion of matches greatly reduces the reliability of the results. Therefore the potential benefits will depend on the availability of good information for matching.

Marks has concluded that PES studies usually provide only a good measure of the variance of the content error. This suggests that frequently the results of a PES will not be very useful for adjusting the data prior to analysis, since such an adjustment requires estimates of the biases in reported ages. For example, adjusting age data before applying stable population analysis requires an estimate of the net errors. For some types of analysis, even more information is needed; for example, adjusting individual observations for use in analyzing differences among individuals requires information about gross errors and adjusting the data prior to applying the Brass techniques for estimating fertility and mortality requires information about the characteristics of those who report age incorrectly. Unless the results of reinterviews can be regarded as correct, they will prove to be of little value in adjusting the data prior to the application of such analytical techniques.

In most circumstances, when the ages reported in the PES suffer from errors similar to those of the initial enumeration, the PES data will provide little more than an estimate of the variance of age reporting, and this estimate itself provides a lower bound for the true variance, because of the tendency for respondents to give the same answer twice. For some purposes, however, it is useful to have an estimate of the variance of age responses, since such an estimate can provide a warning when applying multivariate techniques at the level of the individual. If the variance of age responses is high, the conclusions that can be drawn from the data are severely restricted. Most studies of age misreporting show a rather large random component in age reports, suggesting that caution should be exercised in analysis at the individual level.

Marks's conclusion that PES surveys should concentrate on estimating the completeness of censuses appears to be justified. The question then becomes: Can the cost of PES studies be justified primarily on the basis of the information they provide about errors of completeness? Since results of PES studies in Liberia and Paraguay showed overall undercounts of about 10 percent, the magnitude of coverage errors is probably a major problem. Comparisons in the U.S. of coverage errors estimated from PES studies and those derived from analytic estimates show that there are major discrepancies between the two approaches (Siegel and Zelnick, 1966). However, analytical methods for estimating coverage errors are not very reliable unless there is reasonably accurate information available on fertility, mortality, and migration rates--and such data are often lacking in developing countries. For this reason, PES surveys may provide the only reliable approach to estimating coverage errors in developing countries. Moreover, because many of the techniques for estimating fertility, mortality, and migration rates rely on the assumption that censuses provide complete coverage, estimates of coverage errors are especially important in dealing with data from many developing countries.

COMPARISON OF SOURCES

Several studies of age misreporting have been based on the comparison of ages reported in different record systems. For example, ages reported in censuses or surveys have been compared with those shown on birth certificates or baptismal records (Caldwell, 1966; Gibril, 1975; Raghavachari and Natarajan, 1974; Chari, 1977; Murray, 1979; Pison, 1978; U.S. Bureau of the Census, 1953), death certificates (Great Britain, 1970; U.S. Public Health Service, 1968), and Medicare records (U.S. Bureau of the Census, 1973). Like the reinterview procedure, the record-comparison approach sometimes produces reliable estimates only of the variance of the age reports, since it is often unclear which of the two sources is more accurate. Obvious exceptions are birth certificates and baptismal records, which are generally reliable if the event was in fact recorded shortly after it occurred.

Numerous recent studies demonstrate that even in societies where most births are not recorded, birth or baptismal records can be used for testing the accuracy of reported ages. In Murray's study in Haiti (1979), dates on baptismal records were combined with relative ages in the community to produce estimates of each person's age, which were then compared with reported ages based on an events calendar. In Caldwell's study of Ghana (1966), a sample of children aged 0-8 whose births had been recorded were interviewed to assess the accuracy of age reporting. The Census Evaluation Study of the 1971 census in India used birth registration records in the Sample Registration System to cross-check census reports. The studies of Gambia and Senegal by Gibril (1975) and Pison (1978) compared a census or a survey with data collected during previous longitudinal studies.

If we are to produce better estimates of the biases in age reporting in developing countries, it will be important to find situations in which birth records or baptismal records can be used to measure directly the errors in reporting. In any country there are some births that are recorded, and even if these records are not representative of the whole population, they may still provide the best tool for measuring the degree and nature of age misreporting.

CROSS-TABULATING BY AGE TO IDENTIFY AGE MISREPORTING

Another common way of detecting and measuring age misreporting is to examine the age-specific sex ratios of the enumerated population, which are included in the sex ratio score recommended by the United Nations (1955). This index is the sum of the absolute values of the successive differences in the sex ratios between age groups for five-year age groups from age 0 to 69. In the absence of sex-selective migration and undercounts, this index provides a measure of the net errors in age reporting only to the extent that the patterns of misreporting differ for the two sexes. For example, this method probably fails to give accurate estimates of age misreporting among children aged 0-4, because reporting errors in this age group are apt to be similar for the two sexes.

One problem with the sex-ratio test for age misreporting is that it cannot distinguish between deviations due to age misstatement and deviations due to sex-selective under- or overreporting. An example of this is given in Table 4, which shows the sex ratios for the 1972 census of Paraguay. The reported age distribution leads to a sex ratio score of 4.54, which suggests reasonably accurate reporting. Table 4 also presents age ratios based on the age-sex distribution after it has been adjusted for the estimated undercounts for each age-sex group, as determined by the post-enumeration survey. This adjustment reduces the sex ratio score from 4.54 to 3.92. The biggest improvement in the sex ratios comes at ages 25-29, where the ratio is increased from 93.1 males per 100 females to 99.5 per 100 females.

A second use of simple cross-tabulations was demonstrated by Goldman et al. in their study of the Nepal Fertility Survey (1979). They discovered evidence of the effects of age misreporting by looking at tabulations of parity and marital status by single years of age. For example, they present the following table of the percentage of women ever-married by age (1979:12):

Age	18	19	20	21	22
% Ever Married	77.7	81.1	92.8	89.2	94.4

The relatively high proportion ever married at age 20 as compared with age 21 clearly suggests that ever-married women who are 18 or 19 are sometimes being reported as 20 years old and that single women aged 20 may be being reported as 19.

Similar data are available from the Deschapelles area of rural Haiti. Data from a four-year prospective study by Berggren et al. (1974, 1979) provide the following distributions of age at entry into first marriage and of the proportion ever married.

TABLE 4 Age and Sex Ratios for the 1972 Paraguayan Census, With and Without Adjustments for Age-Selective Underenumeration

	Reported Age Distribution			Age Distribution Adjusted for Undercount[a]		
	Sex Ratio (males per 100 females)	Age Ratios		Sex Ratio (males per 100 females)	Age Ratios	
Age		Males	Females		Males	Females
0-4	103.4	--	--	104.8	--	--
5-9	103.5	103.1	104.2	104.6	101.2	100.7
10-14	106.0	107.3	102.9	103.3	104.4	103.7
15-19	99.0	99.8	102.7	99.9	102.7	103.1
20-24	95.2	92.1	93.7	95.9	94.3	98.1
25-29	93.1	92.3	95.2	99.5	94.2	92.5
30-34	97.0	102.4	97.3	100.6	99.8	96.7
35-39	91.0	87.8	94.3	94.5	87.3	92.5
40-44	98.4	114.7	106.6	99.3	113.4	108.4
45-49	92.1	91.3	96.8	95.8	92.8	94.4
50-54	96.5	109.5	104.3	94.5	106.6	105.8
55-59	91.6	88.8	90.8	90.9	88.5	91.8
60-64	89.2	110.5	108.3	94.0	114.7	105.1
65-69[b]	81.0	85.7	94.4	79.1	83.8	97.0
Mean Absolute Deviation from 100	4.54	8.44	5.12	3.92	7.87	4.91
U.N. Combined Scores[c]	Reported: 27.18			Adjusted: 24.54		

[a] Adjustment based on the results of the post-enumeration survey, from Marks (1978:175-177).

[b] The adjustment for the undercount at 65-69 is based on the value for 65 and over.

[c] The U.N. combined score is three times the sex ratio score plus the two age ratio scores. (See Table 2 for definitions.)

Age	18	19	20	21	22
% Entering First Marriage	2.4	7.8	12.0	11.0	11.0
% Ever Married	27.3	14.0	35.1	41.2	45.5

These data also reflect age distortions that are related to marital status.

Goldman et al. have also compared tabulations of parity by single years of age to a curve of cumulated age-specific fertility rates reported in the same survey of Nepal (1979:22-24). This analysis suggests that the exaggeration of age at the younger ages is related to parity and that at the older ages of childbearing women who are unsure of their age are also apt to underreport their parity. In Table 5, the average parities and deviations from the synthetic cohort in Nepal are compared to similar values for a sample of 1,333 women from the Ashanti region of Ghana, which was selected from the 1971 Supplemental Enquiry data. Because the cumulated "births in the last year" in the Ghanaian data show evidence of underreporting, we have calculated deviations from a three-year moving average of the differences to show more clearly the age selectivity of misreporting of parity. In general, the Ghanaian data show the same pattern as those from Nepal: relatively high reported parity at ages 20 and 25 and relatively low reported parity at ages 40 and 45.

Table 5 also presents data for the women of the Ashanti region on the reported proportion of their children who are now deceased. These data show no evidence of unusually large selective omission of deceased children among women whose ages are reported as 35, 40, or 45. This suggests that the older women of childbearing age, whose ages are heaped due to lack of knowledge of age, have underreported the number of children they have borne, both living and deceased. This is also consistent with the data from Nepal (Goldman et al., 1979:24).

The tests used by Goldman et al. on the Nepal data, and repeated here on the data from Haiti and Ghana, provide an interesting model for the use of cross-tabulations by age to understand misreporting of both age and parity. The techniques provide some information about the nature of the gross errors that

TABLE 5 Comparisons of Reports of Average Parity and Births in the Last Year by Single Year of Age: Nepal 1976 and Ghana 1971

	Nepal		Ashanti Region, Ghana			
					Difference in Parity from Synthetic Cohort (F-P)	
Age	Reported Average Parity (F-P)	Difference in Parity from Synthetic Cohort[a] (F-P)	Reported Average Parity (P)	Percentage of Children Deceased	Reported[a]	Smoothed[b]
15	0.01	0.04	0.02	0.0	-0.01	--
16	0.04	0.08	0.07	10.0	0.00	0.01
17	0.17	0.07	0.22	6.8	-0.03	0.00
18	0.31	0.08	0.45	8.1	-0.07	-0.02
19	0.53	0.07	0.65	8.6	-0.06	0.06
20	0.91	-0.05	1.11	10.7	-0.23	-0.04
21	1.12	-0.01	1.45	12.7	-0.29	-0.02
22	1.45	-0.03	1.72	11.1	-0.28	0.03
23	1.66	0.11	2.06	12.7	-0.36	0.00
24	1.88	0.20	2.41	12.7	-0.44	0.03
25	2.53	-0.13	2.84	13.3	-0.60	-0.06
26	2.66	0.09	3.07	13.8	-0.58	0.04
27	2.87	0.16	3.46	15.9	-0.67	0.02
28	3.01	0.31	3.91	15.6	-0.83	-0.08
29	3.65	-0.07	4.08	15.7	-0.75	0.14
30	3.70	0.15	4.66	17.3	-1.09	-0.17
31	3.91	0.23	4.81	15.7	-0.93	0.13
32	4.19	0.22	5.33	17.8	-1.16	-0.12
33	4.70	-0.03	5.45	18.6	-1.04	0.10
34	4.70	0.21	5.84	19.3	-1.22	-0.08

35	4.65	0.44	6.00	19.7	-1.15	0.01
36	4.86	0.43	6.16	18.6	-1.10	0.05
37	5.26	0.24	6.46	21.0	-1.21	-0.02
38	5.38	0.31	6.71	20.3	-1.27	0.01
39	5.60	0.26	6.94	19.0	-1.37	-0.15
40	5.20	0.75	6.71	22.2	-1.02	0.15
41	5.86	0.20	6.91	22.4	-1.13	0.01
42	5.47	0.68	7.13	24.0	-1.26	0.10
43	6.03	0.17	7.65	25.4	-1.70	-0.21
44	5.80	0.46	7.55	25.2	-1.51	-0.18
45	5.25	1.04	6.88	23.5	-0.78	0.27
46	5.87	0.45	6.99	20.4	-0.86	0.06
47	6.00	0.34	7.29	24.1	-1.12	-0.21
48	5.83	0.52	6.93	24.6	-0.75	0.34
49	6.36	0.01	7.59	22.7	-1.40	

---

[a] Deviations of the reported parities (P) from the cumulated age-specific fertility rates (F) are based on reports of births in the previous year.

[b] Deviation of the differences from three-year moving average of reported differences.

Sources: Nepal: Goldman et al., 1979:23. Ghana: Unpublished data from the Ghana 1971 Supplemental Enquiry.

underlie the more obvious net errors, and the single-year cross-tabulations might reveal evidence of misreporting even when the reported age distribution in five-year age groups does not appear to be affected by misreporting.

ANALYZING COHORT SURVIVAL RATES

If we study a birth cohort, the change in the size of the cohort as measured at two censuses ideally should be due only to mortality and migration. In fact, the reported counts will also be affected by the content and completeness errors in the two censuses. Therefore, it is possible to estimate the extent of these errors by adjusting the proportion surviving between censuses for mortality and migration. The resulting ratio should be very close to 1.0, if the adjustments are correct and there are no reporting errors.

The use of census survival rates to estimate the errors in consecutive censuses is best exemplified by the work of Coale and Zelnick (1963) and Coale and Rives (1973) for the population of the United States. These studies have provided both revised age distributions and revised estimates of fertility for more than a century of American history.

The potential usefulness of census survival rates for studying age misreporting in developing countries is illustrated in Table 6, which presents estimates of errors in nine censuses of India. These figures are based on population figures for ages 0-29 for the areas that were included in all nine of the decennial censuses of India from 1881 to 1961 (Mukherjee, 1976:63). The numbers shown are the result of dividing the census survival ratios by the survival ratios implied by life tables with life expectancies similar to those estimated by Mukherjee for each period. Because the population of India has been affected only slightly by external migration during most of the period, the resulting ratios should be pure indexes of errors in the reported age distributions.

The surprising result in Table 6 is the constancy of these ratios over the eight decades. The average of the ratios for the first three periods is very similar to the average for the last three periods. For most age groups this constancy is more apt to be due to a constant pattern of age misreporting than to a constant pattern of relative undercounts, although both certainly add to the pattern.

TABLE 6 Census Survival Ratios Divided by Appropriate Life Table Survival Ratios for Children and Young Adults in the Indian Censuses of 1881-1961: Areas Common to All Nine Censuses

	Age at Earlier Census							
Date of Earlier Census	Males				Females			
	0-4	5-9	10-14	15-19	0-4	5-9	10-14	15-19
1881	1.01	0.72	1.14	1.58	1.32	0.72	0.83	1.41
1891	1.01	0.68	1.14	1.42	1.27	0.70	0.81	1.31
1901	1.09	0.71	1.04	1.44	1.36	0.73	0.79	1.32
1911	1.03	0.65	1.01	1.33	1.29	0.69	0.76	1.23
1921	1.07	0.69	1.05	1.50	1.33	0.71	0.80	1.37
1931	1.07	0.69	1.02	1.36	1.31	0.70	0.82	1.28
1941	1.13	0.76	1.01	1.35	1.25	0.77	0.83	1.33
1951	1.08	0.81	0.98	1.26	1.23	0.84	0.85	1.21
Average of First Three Ratios	1.04	0.70	1.11	1.48	1.32	0.72	0.81	1.35
Average of Last Three Ratios	1.09	0.75	1.00	1.32	1.26	0.77	0.83	1.27

Note: The values shown are

$$\left[\frac{P_{10}\ (10\text{-}14)}{P_0\ \ (0\text{-}4)}\right] \div \left[\frac{{}_5L_{10}}{{}_5L_0}\right]$$

where P_t(10-14) is the population aged 10-14 at time t and L values are taken from the appropriate life tables for the population. Therefore, values greater than 1.00 suggest a relative overcount of the cohort at the later census; those less than 1.00 suggest a relative undercount.

Source: Based on Mukherjee, 1976:63.

Although the census survival approach can be applied to two censuses, its value increases when three or more age distributions can be compared. Countries that have a well-established tradition of census taking can take special advantage of this technique. For example, Demeny and Shorter's analysis (1968) of the age distributions from the censuses of Turkey between 1935 and 1960 shows clearly that the distortions in the reported age distributions remained constant over this period. Using census survival techniques, they produced estimates of the pattern of misreporting and corrected the age distributions. The corrected distributions then revealed variations in cohort size that could be explained in terms of historical events that probably affected the growth of the population. A more detailed analysis for the period 1950-60 produced similar results (Ntozi, 1978).

A similar study of the age distributions of Tunisia--as reported in the censuses of 1946, 1956, and 1966 and in the National Demographic Survey of 1968 (Picouet, 1969)--demonstrated that some of the apparent distortions in the reported age distributions were due to real differences in cohort size caused by the effects of World War II on fertility and mortality.

It is important to note that the assumption of a constant pattern of age misreporting in a given population is not always justified. Although the evidence from India, Turkey, and the United States demonstrate that misreporting patterns can remain constant over relatively long periods, changes in the patterns do occur. For example, Krotki and Beaujot have noted differences in age reporting errors among Moroccan censuses (1975:347).

The results from census survival studies can be compared to estimates of net reporting errors from post-enumeration surveys. In particular, it is useful to test the results from the 1960 PES of Ghana by comparing the reported age distributions from the 1960 and 1970 censuses. Because of the effect of migration on the Ghanaian population during the decade, one must limit the comparison to the census survival rates of the native-born population. Unfortunately, the age distribution of the native-born is available for only five age groups in the 1960 census (Ghana, 1962:13): 0-4, 5-14, 15-24, 25-54, and 55 and over. This division merges two age groups that are of prime importance for numerous studies: the 15-19 and the 20-24 groups.

Table 7 presents the census survival rates, the life table survival rates, and the survival rates adjusted for mortality during the period. These rates adjusted for mortality differ substantially from 1.0, indicating extensive reporting errors or remaining effects of migration. Because the rates for two of the age cohorts are less than 1.0, and one cohort has rates substantially

TABLE 7 Ten-Year Census Survival Rates for the Native-Born Population of Ghana, Adjusted for Mortality and Estimated Age Reporting Errors

Age at First Census	Census Survival Rate	Life Table Survival Rate[a]	Census Survival Rate ÷ Life Table Survival Rate	Census Survival Rates Adjusted by 1960 PES: 1960 Census Only	Census Survival Rates Adjusted by 1960 PES: Both 1960 and 1970 Censuses
Males					
0-4	0.803	0.914	0.879	0.884	0.938
5-14	0.805	0.943	0.854	0.805	0.762
15-24	1.051	0.926	1.135	1.200	1.183
Females					
0-4	0.747	0.918	0.814	0.798	0.799
5-14	0.912	0.947	0.963	0.962	0.880
15-24	1.117	0.938	1.190	1.301	1.336

[a] From Coale-Demeny model life tables, "North" level 12.

Source: Based on data from Ghana (1962:13; 1964:403; 1975:52).

greater than 1.0, migration is unlikely to have played an important role in these distortions.

In order to test the usefulness of the PES for explaining these survival rates, we first adjusted the 1960 age distribution according to the PES estimates of net errors in age reporting. This adjustment slightly improved only one of the survival rates (males aged 0-4). The largest effect was on the oldest cohort, for which the ratio of the survival rate to the life table rate was made even larger. The second adjustment for age misreporting was to apply the error estimates from the 1960 PES to the 1970 census figures as well, on the assumption that the pattern of misreporting was probably very similar for the two censuses. These adjustments improved the rates for only one cohort substantially (again, males aged 0-4), while most of the rates were moved farther from a value of 1.0.

These tests suggest that estimates of the net errors in age reporting from the 1960 census of Ghana provide little help in adjusting the age distribution. Although estimates for some of the five-year age groups probably would have performed better, it is unlikely that they would have been able to improve the age distribution appreciably.

There are two possible reasons why these adjustments did not succeed. The first is that the PES probably did not result in improved estimation of ages; estimates of net reporting errors may provide little or no information on the real biases in age reporting. A second reason is that the PES did not produce useful estimates of coverage errors. It is possible that the coverage errors were substantial and may have differed substantially for different age-sex groups. For example, in the 1968-69 National Demographic Sample Survey of Ghana, the two rounds were compared to estimate the coverage errors. This comparison demonstrated that the males and females aged 15 and over were underenumerated by 26 and 15 percent, respectively (Gaisie, 1976:68). Although Gaisie concluded that the sample survey had poorer coverage than the censuses, it is clear that substantial coverage errors that differ by age and sex are possible causes of the distortions in the 1960-70 census survival rates.

The 1970 and 1980 census rounds provide second and third censuses for many countries, thereby increasing the number of populations to which the census survival techniques can be applied. These techniques are also useful for combining reported age distributions and PES estimates of underreporting to isolate errors that are apparently caused by age misreporting.

STABLE POPULATION ANALYSIS

One of the most valuable tools for studying errors in reported age distributions is to compare them with model populations that reflect the best guess about demographic trends in the population. Until recently, stable population analysis was one of the few techniques widely applicable to developing countries. During the 1960s and 1970s, many new countries had their first census and many of them had experienced only moderate declines in mortality and no decline in fertility in recent decades. These conditions made it possible, and to some extent necessary, to estimate errors in age reporting by comparing stable population models to single censuses.

Comparing a population's reported age distribution to a stable model is far from ideal as a method for estimating age misreporting because it cannot distinguish between content and coverage errors (Krotki, 1969) and it is affected by migration and fluctuations in fertility and mortality (Keyfitz, 1966). However, numerous studies based on this approach have shown that distortions in age distributions tend to follow patterns that appear in widely differing cultures.

To demonstrate the usefulness of the stable population approach, we applied it to the age-sex distribution from the 1972 census of Paraguay. In addition, we applied the same technique to the census data after adjusting for the age-sex selective undercounts, estimated from the post-enumeration survey. This allows us to evaluate the relationship between the stable population estimates of distortions and the PES estimates of distortions due to selective undercounts.

We used two indexes to measure how closely the data fit the stable model. The first index is the sum of the squared deviations of the actual proportion in each age group from the fitted stable model values; the smaller the value of that index the better the fit. The second index compares the differences between the crude birth rates (CBR) estimated using a stable model and the proportions under each fifth age from 5 to 45. If the population had really been stable and if the age distributions were reported correctly, all nine estimates of the CBR should be equal. As an index of variability we used the CBR mid-range: the difference between the third-highest CBR estimate and the seventh-highest CBR estimate.

Table 8 presents the results of this analysis. It is clear from the table that the adjustment for the PES estimate of the undercount greatly improved the fit of the male population to the stable model. There are small improvements for many age groups, and both overall indexes improved noticeably for the males. However, the fit of the female population showed little or no improvement. It therefore appears that, at least for Paraguay, the age selectivity of the undercount distorts the age distribution of males more than it does that of females. It also appears that the undercount was the reason that the reported age distribution for males produced less-consistent estimates of the CBR than was the case for females.

In addition, it is worth noting that for both males and females the adjustment for the undercount improved virtually every age group except 0-4 and 15-19. However, since large deviations persist in many age groups, it appears that age misreporting must be the prime source of errors in many age groups.

TABLE 8 Stable Population Analysis of the Reported and Adjusted Age Distributions: Paraguay 1972

	Reported by Census					Adjusted for Undercount				
Age	c(a)	C(a)	CBR	Stable c(a)	c(a) ÷ Stable c(a)	c(a)	C(a)	CBR	Stable c(a)	c(a) ÷ Stable c(a)
Males										
0-4	16.00	16.00	37.86	17.26	0.93	16.14	16.14	38.23	17.63	0.92
5-9	15.67	31.67	41.17[a]	14.42	1.09	15.27	31.41	40.75	14.65	1.04
10-14	14.40	46.07	44.11	12.29	1.17	14.03	45.44	43.24	12.41	1.13
15-19	11.17	57.23	44.85	10.46	1.07	11.62	57.06	44.63	10.51	1.11
20-24	7.98	65.22	43.76	8.85	0.90	8.59	65.64	44.31	8.84	0.97
24-29	6.17	71.38	42.08	7.47	0.83	6.60	72.24	43.29	7.42	0.89
30-34	5.37	76.75	40.75	6.28	0.86	5.42	77.66	42.17[a]	6.21	0.87
35-39	4.33	81.08	39.33	5.26	0.82	4.26	81.92	40.62	5.18	0.82
40-44	4.48	85.57	39.18	4.38	1.02	4.34	86.26	40.43	4.29	1.01
CBR Mid-range:			4.43					2.67		
Sum of Squared Deviations from 1.0:					0.138					0.099

Females										
0-4	15.21	15.21	35.30	16.32	0.93	15.31	15.31	35.56	16.80	0.91
5-9	14.88	30.09	38.14	13.80	1.08	14.50	29.81	37.70	14.11	1.03
10-14	13.36	43.45	40.05	11.87	1.13	13.51	43.32	39.89	12.05	1.12
15-19	11.09	54.54	41.01	10.21	1.09	11.56	54.87	41.43	10.30	1.12
20-24	8.24	62.78	40.37	8.74	0.94	8.90	63.78	41.62	8.75	1.02
25-29	6.51	69.30	39.29	7.45	0.87	6.59	70.36	40.63	7.41	0.89
30-34	5.44	74.74	38.20[a]	6.35	0.86	5.35	75.72	39.46[a]	6.27	0.85
35-39	4.68	79.42	37.19	5.39	0.87	4.49	80.21	38.33	5.29	0.85
40-44	4.48	83.90	36.91	4.55	0.98	4.35	84.55	37.99	4.43	0.98
CBR Mid-range:			2.86					2.64		
Sum of Squared Deviations from 1.0:					0.094					0.096

---

[a] These are the median CBR estimates, used to determine the stable fit. The model life table used is Coale-Demeny "West" level 17.

Source: Based on Marks (1978:177-179) and U.N. Demographic Yearbook (1975:236-237).

TABLE 9 Stable Population Analysis of the Reported and Adjusted Age Distributions: Liberia 1974

	Reported by Census				Adjusted for Undercount			
Age	c(a)	C(a)	CBR	c(a) ÷ Stable c(a)	c(a)	C(a)	CBR	c(a) ÷ Stable c(a)
Males								
0-4	15.18	15.18	39.77[a]	1.00	15.39	15.39	40.39	0.99
5-9	15.10	30.28	43.93	1.18	15.16	30.55	44.43	1.16
10-14	11.53	41.81	43.30	1.01	11.60	42.14	43.80	1.00
15-19	9.96	51.77	42.71	0.98	10.60	52.75	44.07	1.03
20-24	7.18	58.94	40.30	0.80	7.38	60.13	41.83	0.82
25-29	7.08	66.02	39.35	0.90	7.11	67.24	40.90[a]	0.91
30-34	6.21	72.22	38.45	0.91	6.21	73.45	40.13	0.92
35-39	6.24	78.46	38.81	1.06	6.20	79.65	40.63	1.07
40-44	4.76	83.22	38.14	0.94	4.60	84.24	39.98	0.93
CBR Mid-Range:			4.53				3.41	
Sum of Squared Deviations from 1.0:				0.098				0.083
Females								
0-4	15.11	15.11	38.52	0.93	15.98	15.98	40.95	0.94
5-9	14.69	29.80	41.95[a]	1.09	14.86	30.83	43.78[a]	1.07
10-14	10.18	39.99	39.70	0.87	10.12	40.95	41.09	0.84
15-19	11.22	51.20	41.18	1.10	11.66	52.61	43.04	1.13
20-24	9.01	60.21	41.41	1.02	8.97	61.58	43.20	1.01
25-29	8.99	69.20	43.28	1.18	8.75	70.33	44.87	1.16
30-34	7.74	76.95	45.38	1.19	7.56	77.88	46.92	1.18
35-39	6.17	83.12	47.12	1.12	5.97	83.86	48.52	1.11
40-44	4.15	87.27	46.95	0.89	3.94	87.79	48.13	0.87
CBR Mid-Range:			4.20				3.88	
Sum of Squared Deviations from 1.0:				0.135				0.138

[a] These are the median CBR estimates, used to determine the stable fit. The model life table used is Coale-Demeny "West" Level 11.

Source: Based on Marks and Rumford (1978:190-191) and U.N. Demographic Yearbook (1978).

Table 9 presents the same type of analysis for the 1974 census of Liberia, with adjustments based on the estimates of underenumeration from the PES. The results of this analysis are similar to those for Paraguay. Adjusting for underenumeration increased the consistency with the stable model for both the male and female age distributions. Once again, the improvement in the fit for the males was more substantial than that for the females, reducing the mid-range of the CBR estimates by more than one point. This suggests that age-selective underenumeration is a more important source of error for males than it is for females. As in the Paraguay case, the adjustment for underenumeration increased the difference between the reported distribution and the stable model for females 15-19 and had the same effect on females 10-14. For males 15-19, the adjustment reversed the relationship between the reported distribution and the stable, raising the reported value from 2 percent below the stable to 3 percent above it.

There is one further similarity between these two populations. In both cases, adjusting the distribution increased the median estimate of the CBR (which was used to determine the age distribution) by at least one point for both sexes. The main reason for this is the fact that in both cases the estimates of the degree of undercount are lower for ages over age 35. This relatively low underenumeration over age 35 was seen in Table 1, which showed this to be a feature of all the populations for which such estimates are available. This conclusion supports the fears expressed by Krotki (1969:9) that the methods recommended in U.N. Manual IV for estimating fertility rates from stable age distributions might lead to underestimation of fertility because of age-specific underenumeration.

Although both the Liberian and the Paraguayan age distributions were apparently improved by making adjustments for the estimated underenumeration, there were still significant differences between the reported and the stable distributions. These differences are probably due to age misreporting, although some of the distortion probably is caused by undetected underenumeration and real deviations from stability.

4 Typical Patterns of Distortion in Reported Age Distributions

Although age misreporting and the age selectivity of content errors are clearly related to the design of the survey, the training of the interviewers, and the cultural environment of the population, there are common patterns of distortions that are found in censuses and surveys conducted in widely differing settings.

During the last 15 years, studies in developing countries have produced extensive information about these patterns and the reasons for them. One of the most comprehensive studies was carried out at the Office of Population Research at Princeton under the direction of Ansley Coale and Paul Demeny. This research was based on stable population analysis of more than 150 age-sex distributions from censuses or surveys of populations thought to be approximately stable (United Nations, 1967:17-23). These studies led to the discovery of two basic patterns of distortion. The first pattern is typical of populations in Africa and Southern Asia, while the second is typical of Latin America. The so-called African pattern is characterized by "a systematic form of unidirectional age-misreporting over a broad range" which even distorts the cumulated age distribution (United Nations, 1967:19). The Latin American pattern "causes pronounced age heaping by single years, the distribution by five-years tends to alternate excesses and deficits, and the cumulative distribution is not much distorted."

The African pattern of distortions for females is characterized by "a surplus at 5-9, and a deficit in the adolescent age intervals (10-14 and 15-19), followed by a surplus in the central ages of childbearing (25-34)" (United Nations, 1967:19). For males, the distortions appear to be larger and there are fewer similarities between the patterns for various countries. Coale and Demeny concluded that these distortions have three major causes: (1) a tendency to exaggerate the ages of children 0-4, (2) a tendency to exaggerate the ages of girls 10-14 if they have passed puberty and to understate the ages of those who have not reached puberty, and (3) a tendency to exaggerate the ages of women 15-29, probably to make their ages consistent with expectations regarding age at marriage and fertility.

The Latin American pattern is much simpler and generally involves preference for the age groups 25-29 and 35-39 over the groups 30-34 and 40-44. There also seems to be a general surplus of women reported at 20-29. Unlike the African pattern, the male Latin American pattern seems to be less distorted than the female (United Nations, 1967:21).

The patterns of distortions in age reports discovered through stable population analysis provide valuable information that can help researchers recognize distortions due to age misreporting and content errors. Moreover, these patterns give us some confidence that studies of distortions in particular populations may apply to other populations. However, this approach cannot provide detailed knowledge of the reasons for the distortions and it provides little information about the impact of misreporting on analytical techniques other than stable population analysis. It also fails to distinguish between distortions in the reported age distribution that are caused by misreporting and distortions due to age-selective omission rates.

It is useful to note that even random errors, which are themselves unbiased, can introduce distortions into an age distribution. Recording errors for the young cannot be unbiased, because of the impossibility of recording a negative age, but a normally distributed error term beginning at some age such as 10 will tend to reduce the size of large age groups and inflate small ones. In any population with a basically triangular age distribution, such as a stable population with a positive growth rate, an error term that is normally distributed after childhood and of constant standard deviation will inflate the population at each age, giving rise to an impression of age exaggeration. This effect, however, is extremely small. For example, in a stable population with a growth rate of 2.5 percent per year and an expectation of life at birth of 57.5 years, a normally distributed error with a standard deviation of three years affecting the entire reporting population would inflate the population aged 20 by 0.29 percent and the population aged 70 by 0.47 percent. These biases, which from a practical point of view are unimportant, would be increased somewhat if the standard deviation of the error term increased with age, as it probably would. The size of the error is a function of the slope of the age distribution, and it will therefore increase with age, but it can never have a quantitatively important effect on the age distribution under 70. This error has been discussed at some length because it provides an interesting example of the complex effects of even simple age reporting errors.

In the sections that follow, we review the studies that have shed light on the causes of age distortions in three broad age groups: infancy and childhood (ages 0-14), adolescence and the early childbearing years (15-29), and ages 30 and over. In each case we evaluate the relative importance of content and coverage errors in creating the distortions and attempt to determine the likely characteristics of those whose age is misreported or who are missed by the enumerators.

AGE MISREPORTING FOR INFANTS, YOUNG CHILDREN, AND ADOLESCENTS

The ages of infants and children are probably reported more accurately than the ages of adults. There are two important reasons for this. First, the ages of children are generally reported by parents or other adults who remember the birth. Second, the rapid physiological and psychological changes during childhood make it easier to guess a child's age with reasonable accuracy. However, because accurate reporting of these age groups is so important in estimating recent fertility rates, small errors for these age groups may be more troublesome than larger errors at later ages.

Several recent studies of age misreporting provide exceedingly accurate evidence on reporting errors among children. Two of them, Gibril's study of Gambia (1975) and Pison's study of Senegal (1978, 1979, 1980), are based on matching of individual records from a survey or census with records from long-term medical or demographic studies. A third study by Caldwell (1966) is based on a follow-up survey among 1,000 births recorded in the birth registration area of Ghana. All three provide estimates of the gross errors in the reporting of age.

Table 10 presents the proportion of children whose ages were reported correctly, the proportion exaggerated, and the proportion understated from each of the three studies. Caldwell's data cover only ages 0-8 while Pison's cover ages 3-14. Gibril's data are available only for five-year age groups. All three studies show decreasing accuracy with age; by age 8, only 30 to 40 percent report the correct age. This finding is clearly consistent with the fact that by age 8 physical changes are less rapid than they are under age 5; by age 8, visual examination of a child provides fewer clues to his exact age.

Table 11 shows the mean error in reported ages for Ghana and Senegal. Both studies show a slight bias toward overstating the ages of children up to about age 6. After age 8 the Senegal data show understatement of age; the Gambian data in Table 10 show a clear downward bias in reported age for the 10-14 age group.

Pison noted that at all ages there is a persistent proportion of parents who report their child's age by the number of rainy seasons since the birth (1978:42). Since the 1977 survey was carried out in May, for the children born between May and October the number of rainy seasons since their birth would be one greater than their actual age. Caldwell's explanation for the exaggeration of the ages of young children is similar: if parents tend to round off their child's age, rather than truncating it to the number of completed years, this would lead to an exaggeration of ages. For example, if parents report the age of a child as 4 years if the child is between 3 years 6 months and 4 years 5 months, then about half of the children aged 3 at their last birthday would be reported as 4 years old. His analysis of age misreporting clearly shows that most of the cases of overstatement by 1 year involved persons who were within 6 months of the reported age (Caldwell, 1966:487).

The data from Senegal and Gambia both exhibit larger proportions understating age than overstating age above about age 7, despite the strong persistence of overstatement by 1 year. In Pison's data from Senegal, understatement by more than 1 year is far more common than

TABLE 10 Gross Errors in Reported Ages of Children Aged 0-14, Expressed in Percentages: Ghana, Senegal, and Gambia

	Ghana			Senegal			Gambia		
Real Age	Under-stated	Stated Correctly	Over-stated	Under-stated	Stated Correctly	Over-stated	Under-stated	Stated Correctly	Over-stated
0	--	99	1	--	--	--	--	--	--
1	1	76	23	--	--	--	--	--	--
2	1	66	33	--	--	--	--	--	--
3	9	63	28	7	46	46	--	--	--
4	8	61	31	17	54	29	--	--	--
0-4	--	--	--	--	95	5	--	87	12
5	13	62	25	29	38	33	--	--	--
6	12	57	31	39	43	18	--	--	--
7	27	35	38	45	40	15	--	--	--
8	27	42	31	56	30	14	--	--	--
9	--	--	--	53	31	16	--	--	--
5-9	--	--	--	12	84	4	9	81	10
10	--	--	--	53	36	11	--	--	--
11	--	--	--	58	18	24	--	--	--
12	--	--	--	65	20	15	--	--	--
13	--	--	--	67	15	17	--	--	--
14	--	--	--	59	29	12	--	--	--
10-14	--	--	--	32	64	4	26	66	8

Note: The totals given for ages 0-4 in Senegal are based on the assumption that the ages of all children aged 0, 1, and 2 were reported correctly as 0-4.

Sources: Ghana: Caldwell, 1966:485. Senegal: Pison, 1978:39-40 and 1979:643-646. Gambia: Gibril, 1975:67-68.

TABLE 11 Mean Error in Years in Reported Ages of Children Aged 0-14: Ghana and Senegal

Real Age	Ghana	Senegal
0	0.0	--
1	0.2	--
2	0.4	--
3	0.2	0.4
4	0.3	0.2
5	0.1	0.1
6	0.3	-0.3
7	0.1	-0.5
8	-0.1	-0.8
9	--	-0.7
10	--	-1.2
11	--	-1.2
12	--	-1.5
13	--	-1.5
14	--	-1.5

Note: Positive values indicate a mean exaggeration of age; negative values indicate a mean understatement.

Sources: Ghana: Based on Caldwell, 1966:485. Senegal: From Pison, 1978:39-40 and 1979:643.

overstatement of the same magnitude at ages 6 and above. Caldwell's data for Ghana show a similar pattern at age 8 and some evidence of this phenomenon at age 7.

The Census Evaluation Study of the 1971 census of India produced comparable data on age misreporting among children born during the four years preceding the census. The study matched a sample of births from the Sample Registration System with the census reports on a case-by-case basis. Unfortunately, only partial results from this study have been published. Preliminary information from the study is similar to the results of the other studies. Of the population aged 0-4, 6.1 percent of the males and 4.2 percent of the females were reported as being aged 5-9 (Raghavachari and Natarajan, 1974:5), a result quite consistent with the findings from Senegal given in Table 10.

Table 12 presents the multiplicative adjustment factors needed to adjust the Indian population aged 0, 1, and 2 for net reporting errors. These figures show that the net impact of age misreporting on the infant population is

TABLE 12 Adjustment Factors for Net Age Misreporting for Infants: Evaluation Study, 1971 Census of India

Age in Census	Males	Females
0	1.04	1.01
1	1.35	1.33
2	0.87	0.90

Source: Raghavachari and Natarajan, 1974:4.

slight, whereas the size of the populations aged 1 and 2 is seriously distorted by misreporting. Although the data cover only these three ages, they are consistent with a large amount of age exaggeration among those aged 1. There does not, however, seem to be similar exaggeration among those aged 2.

Table 13 presents data from 19 African censuses which can be compared with the studies by Gibril, Caldwell, and Pison. The table shows the ratio of the population reported at age x to the population reported at age x + 1. In almost all the countries the data show clear evidence of preference for even-numbered ages above age 5. Neither Gibril, Caldwell, nor Pison discusses this kind of digit preference.

Table 14 presents a simulation of age misreporting based on Pison's matrix of age reporting. The simulation starts with a stable population with a growth rate of 2 percent and Coale and Demeny's "North" model life table level 10, and applies the pattern of misreporting indicated by Pison's Senegal data. The results show a clear preference for ages 4, 6, 7, and 10. The pattern of misreporting indicated by the simulation is not exactly the same as the pattern implied by the data in Table 13 from the 1961 census of Senegal. Both show the same preference for age 7; however, in the Senegal census the preference for 7 seems to replace the usual preference for age 6, whereas in Pison's study it replaces the usual preference for age 8. In any case it seems clear that in Senegal there is a preference for even-numbered ages and for age 7.

Caldwell's data (1966:479) provide some evidence of preference for even digits but not enough to explain the 25 percent surplus of persons aged 6 and 8 over those aged 7 and 9 found in the 1960 census of Ghana.

It is quite possible that the careful training of interviewers used for this study or the need to depend on urban populations reduced the amount of digit preference to below the level found in the census.

Preference for ages 8, 10, and 12 is common in data from other parts of the world. A survey of 4 censuses from North Africa, 6 from South America, and 15 from Asia demonstrates that preference for even-numbered ages is very strong almost everywhere. This preference is also found in the World Fertility Surveys in Nepal, Sri Lanka, and Colombia, and a preference for ages 10 and 12 appears in the WFS surveys in Fiji and Mexico.

A second feature of the African census data reviewed in Table 13 is the wide diversity in the ratio of the population aged 0 to the population aged 1. This differs from Caldwell's finding that "extraordinary accuracy characterizes the group under 1 year of age" (1966:485). The range of ratios in Table 13 (from 0.33 to 1.48) suggests that countries vary widely in the degree of underreporting of the population aged 0 and in the degree of accuracy of age reporting among children aged 0 and 1. These ratios can also be affected by annual fluctuations in birth rates and infant mortality rates. In addition, different instructions to the census takers, different emphases in training, and the design of the census questionnaire all affect the reporting and reported ages of children under age 2. It is unlikely that such a wide range could be explained by any one phenomenon.

It is interesting to note that even in the World Fertility Surveys there is great variation in the ratios of the population aged 0 to the population aged 1 and of the population aged 1 to the population aged 2 (Dominican Republic, 1976; Fiji, 1976; Colombia, 1977; Nepal, 1977; Indonesia, 1978; Mexico, 1978; Sri Lanka, 1978). For example, the ratios derived from the survey in Nepal were both greater than one (1.11 and 1.07, respectively), while in Mexico they were both less than one (0.92 and 0.95), and in Fiji they were mixed (0.93 and 1.00).

In summary, it appears that single-year age distributions are frequently distorted by digit preference over age 5, by decreasing accuracy at the older ages of childhood, and possibly by increasing understatement of age. In addition, the population aged 0 is distorted by a variety of factors that make generalizations impossible.

Evidence on the reasons for some of these errors is derived from Scott and Sabagh's study on the value of historical calendars. In their discussion of the various

TABLE 13 Ratio of the Reported Population Aged x to the Reported Population Aged x + 1, for Ages 0-13: 19 African Censuses

		Age													
		x = 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13
Country	Year	x + 1 = 1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14
Botswana	1964	0.56	0.91	0.97	1.00	0.95	1.09	1.00	1.03	1.02	1.01	1.63	0.62	1.55	0.91
Ghana	1960	1.31	0.82	0.90	1.11	1.12	0.94	1.27	1.00	1.25	0.89	1.68	0.66	1.29	1.14
Kenya	1962	1.09	0.62	1.11	0.96	1.25	0.88	1.30	0.78	1.54	0.67	2.26	0.46	1.82	1.24
	1969	0.89	0.89	1.11	0.39	1.09	0.97	1.20	0.90	1.27	0.86	1.54	0.69	1.36	1.09
Lesotho	1966	0.89	1.07	0.91	1.03	0.92	1.04	1.11	0.93	1.08	0.86	1.38	0.71	1.17	0.98
Liberia	1962	1.48	0.55	0.88	1.08	1.11	1.05	1.28	0.91	1.25	0.92	2.17	0.53	1.58	1.15
Mauritius	1952	0.99	0.93	1.09	1.10	1.04	1.19	0.95	1.01	1.30	0.97	1.11	0.87	1.15	1.06
	1962	1.11	0.94	1.01	0.99	1.01	1.04	1.04	1.05	0.96	1.02	0.99	1.03	1.20	1.02
Nigeria	1963	0.80	0.99	0.89	1.09	1.07	1.14	0.89	1.27	0.85	0.96	2.05	0.59	1.58	0.90
Senegal	1961	1.29	0.82	0.91	1.03	1.07	1.09	0.92	1.22	1.30	1.11	1.12	1.04	1.06	1.19

Southern Rhodesia ("African" population)	1969	0.33	1.16	1.09	1.02	0.91	1.12	0.96	1.21	0.78	1.21	1.03	1.17	0.93	0.79
South West Africa	1946	0.84	0.96	0.79	0.99	1.02	0.97	1.13	0.93	1.23	0.83	1.52	0.75	1.43	1.03
Swaziland	1966	1.20	0.85	0.97	1.08	0.96	1.02	1.11	0.94	1.14	0.94	1.34	0.77	1.18	1.07
Tanzania	1967	1.11	0.84	0.87	1.05	1.11	0.98	1.13	1.07	1.16	0.95	1.76	0.64	1.35	1.06
Togo	1958-60	1.41	0.86	0.72	1.32	0.96	0.99	1.16	1.22	1.21	1.19	1.70	0.71	1.42	1.12
Tunisia	1966	0.96	1.00	1.07	1.06	1.09	0.95	1.10	1.03	1.08	0.97	1.10	1.97	1.11	1.05
Uganda	1969	0.69	0.99	1.05	1.04	1.12	0.99	1.22	0.93	1.24	0.88	1.54	0.68	1.32	1.03
Union of South Africa	1946	0.85	0.94	0.99	1.01	1.07	0.92	1.23	0.83	1.30	0.78	1.62	0.63	1.38	1.07
Zambia	1969	1.08	1.05	1.04	1.03	1.02	1.01	1.06	1.14	0.93	1.10	1.14	1.02	1.16	1.03

Source: U.N. Demographic Yearbooks, 1955-73.

TABLE 14 Simulation of Age Misreporting at Ages 3-14, Sexes Combined: Based on Pison's Study in Senegal

	Ages											
Measures	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14
Stable Population[a]	7,324	7,016	6,804	6,598	6,398	6,205	6,017	5,835	5,688	5,544	5,404	5,267
Matrix of Misreporting[b]												
Percent biased:												
up 4 years	--	--	--	2.1	--	--	--	--	--	--	2.2	--
up 3 years	--	--	--	0.0	--	--	1.3	1.6	2.8	6.2	2.2	--
up 2 years	--	3.1	2.6	0.0	1.9	2.0	1.3	0.0	2.8	1.5	4.3	--
up 1 year	46.7	26.2	30.8	15.8	13.2	12.0	13.8	9.4	18.1	7.7	8.7	11.8
0 year	46.7	53.8	38.5	43.2	39.6	30.0	31.3	35.9	18.1	20.0	15.3	29.4
down 1 year	6.7	16.9	25.6	23.2	26.4	28.0	20.0	17.2	20.8	9.2	21.7	17.6
down 2 years	--	--	2.6	12.6	15.1	18.0	21.3	9.4	8.3	29.2	8.7	14.7
down 3 years	--	--	--	3.2	3.8	8.0	8.8	15.6	9.7	6.2	21.7	5.9
down 4 years	--	--	--	--	--	2.0	1.3	7.8	12.5	7.7	0.0	5.9
down 5 years	--	--	--	--	--	--	1.3	3.1	6.9	12.3	15.2	14.7
"Reported" Population		10,214	7,710	9,347	9,075	6,258	5,343	8,232				
Ratio of Reported to Real		1.46	1.13	1.42	1.42	1.01	0.89	1.41				
Population Reported at Age x ÷ Population Reported at Age x + 1		1.32	0.82	1.03	1.45	1.17	0.62					

[a] The stable or "real" population used is from Coale-Demeny model life tables, "North" level 10, r = 1.02.
[b] From Pison, 1978:39-40 and 1979:643.

estimates of age for children aged 4-13, they report the following (1970:101):

> It is clear that for both males and females there is a noticeable heaping at even ages (6, 8, 10, and 12) in the distribution based on the eye estimate. On the other hand, the distribution based on the calendar estimate is more regular for ages 8-13. The marked heapings at age 7 for both sexes may have been the result of a more frequent use of an important event in the recent history of Morocco (the return of King Mohammed V in 1955). Thus, while the calendar estimate yields a more regular distribution than the eye estimate, it is not free from irregularities generated, in part, by the use of 'popular' events.

From the available studies, it appears that there are several ways in which reporting of ages among children can be improved. First, Scott and Sabagh's study suggests that using an historical calendar with annual events can increase the smoothness of the reported age distribution for children. Although Caldwell and Igun's study (discussed at length in the appendix) suggests that the use of calendars may lead to systematic overstatement of ages, their evidence on this is ambiguous at the youngest ages. A second approach, which might improve reporting of single-year ages among children, would be to try to use local traditional methods of age reporting. For example, if children's ages are frequently based on the number of rainy seasons since their birth (as is apparently the case in Senegal), then collecting data on both the number of winters since the child's birth and the season of the child's birth could improve estimates of "age last birthday." However, the value of such techniques may be limited to certain age groups. Both the use of historical calendars and the use of a question on season of birth could prove useful up to about age 10 or 12, but they probably would be less useful above age 15.

Before proceeding to the older age groups it is important to review some of the data on underenumeration of young children, since both stable population analysis and census survival approaches to studying age misreporting are sensitive to underreporting of children. The comparison of undercounts estimated from post-enumeration surveys in Table 1 showed that in most cases children aged 0-4 were undercounted relative to coverage for the population as a whole. However, because the undercounting of children is not apt to be more than 2 percent relative to the undercount of the rest of the population, the reported proportion aged 0-4 may frequently be off by less than 0.003 percent due to underenumeration (that is, an error of 2 percent in a proportion aged 0-4 that constitutes 17 percent of the total population).

The data presented in Table 1 suggest that census survival estimates of the underenumeration of children aged 0-4 might provide good estimates of the absolute amount of underenumeration, but these estimates probably overestimate the importance of this problem for stable population analysis. The reason for this is that while the population aged 0-4 is usually counted less completely than the rest of the population, those aged 10-14 are generally counted more completely. Therefore a comparison of the population 0-4 at one census with the population 10-14 ten years later probably overstates the underenumeration of young children relative to the total population.

The Census Evaluation Study of the 1971 Census of India produced estimates of the omission rates for children aged 0, 1, and 2. These data, given in Table 15, show an apparent undercount of about 14 percent among infants, 18 percent among those aged 1, and about 8 percent among those aged 2. The slightly higher omission rate for 1-year-olds relative to infants is explained by the fact that all women were specifically asked about births during the previous year (Raghavachari and Natarajan, 1974:5).

TABLE 15 Estimated Omission Rates of Children Aged 0, 1, and 2: Evaluation Study, 1971 Census of India

	Estimated Percent Omitted	
True Age	Males	Females
0	14.5	13.2
1	18.4	17.6
2	9.4	7.1

Source: Based on Raghavachari and Natarajan, 1974:5. Unlike the figures given in the original report of the Evaluation Study, these percentages are the percent of the true population that was not enumerated.

The drop in the omission rate at age 2 suggests that the overall omission rate for the age group 0-4 might be in the range of 10 to 12 percent. Unfortunately, estimates of the undercount for the total population have not been published, so it is not possible to estimate the error in the reported proportion aged 0-4. Since these estimates are based on the matching of birth registration forms with census forms, it would be useful to know the extent of matching problems in the study.

The United States Infant Enumeration Study of 1950 shows one possible reason why the undercount for infants is closely tied to the undercount at other ages. In that study, 82 percent of the infants who were not reported in the census were the children of adults who were also not listed in the census (U.S. Bureau of the Census, 1953). This suggests the hypothesis that the underenumeration of persons aged 15-19 and of children aged 0-4 might be caused by the omission of newly formed small households or families.

AGE DISTRIBUTION DISTORTIONS AND UNDERENUMERATION AT AGES 15-29

Between the ages of 15 and 30 most individuals reach puberty, form their first conjugal union, and have their first children. Along with these changes, individuals often migrate or set up new households. Each of these events marks a change in a person's place in the community, each plays an important role in population dynamics, and each is of primary interest to demographers. The significance of these changes is made even more crucial by the fact that some of our techniques for estimating overall fertility and child mortality rates (especially those developed by Brass) rely heavily on the reported experience of women aged 15-29.

The very factors that make this age group of special interest to demographers are also factors that contribute to the age misreporting and underenumeration of these age groups. In societies in which age is unimportant, ages of young women are frequently estimated by their physical maturity, their union status, or their parity. Likewise, migration and formation of new households are probably responsible for the relatively large amount of underenumeration in this age group. For example, Ware has pointed out that in the Cameroons a young woman who is betrothed but still living with her parents might not be counted in either her parent's home or her future spouse's home since she is in limbo between households (1977:35-37).

Table 16 presents estimates from three studies of age misreporting for persons aged 15-29. Because the studies used different methods of estimating reporting errors, it is difficult to compare the results. Gibril's data are

TABLE 16 Estimates of Age Misreporting for Ages 15-29: Gambia, Indonesia, and Nigeria

Population	"True" Age Group	Sample Size	Reported 5-Year Age Group (percentages)					Average Error (in number of 5-year groups)
			2+ lower	1 lower	Same	1 higher	2+ higher	
Gambia								
Males	15-19	100	1	28	50	15	6	-0.03
	20-24	79	1	10	43	42	4	0.41
	25-29	41	0	10	39	37	15	0.66
Females	15-19	108	2	12	64	12	10	0.16
	20-24	120	3	15	40	37	6	0.31
	25-29	82	1	22	44	27	6	0.17
Indonesia								
Ever-Married Females	15-19	27	--	--	93	7	--	0.07
	20-24	87	--	3	90	7	--	0.04
	25-29	99	--	3	92	3	2	0.04
Nigeria								
Males	15-19	675	--	8	84	8	--	0.00
	20-24	528	--	8	84	8	--	0.00
	25-29	467	--	10	79	10	1	0.02
Females	15-19	549	--	5	85	10	--	0.05
	20-24	570	--	10	81	9	--	-0.01
	25-29	510	--	10	82	18	--	0.09

Sources: Gambia: Based on a comparison of 1971 census records with birth records or with annual surveys, from Gibril (1975:67-68). Indonesia: Based on a comparison of the original interview and a reconciliation interview, from unpublished tabulations from the reliability study of the 1976 Indonesia Fertility Study. Nigeria: Based on a comparison of the conventional census technique with the "model age of cohort" method. The sample sizes correspond to the conventional census. From Caldwell and Igun (1971:297).

undoubtedly the most reliable because they are based on a comparison of the census ages with ages based on birth records for the previous 20 years and on annual surveys carried out for about 20 years. His data show that for both sexes fewer than half of the individuals in this age group were reported in the correct five-year age group. For males aged 15-19 there were fewer ages exaggerated than understated but the upward biases were large enough to make the average error close to zero. However, for males aged 20-29 there was a clear exaggeration of age; in that age group there were about five ages exaggerated for every one that was understated and the average bias was quite large. These results differ from Caldwell and Igun's, which are based on a careful matching of individuals with contemporaries. Their data show that more than 80 percent of the men aged 15-29 were classified in the same age group according to the two estimates of age and there are no apparent tendencies toward exaggeration or understatement.

Gibril's data for females show a clear tendency to exaggerate ages. In each of the five-year age groups more women exaggerated age than understated it and the proportion exaggerating by two groups or more is larger than the proportion understating age by the same amount. The findings from the reinterviewing of a sample of ever-married women from the WFS in Indonesia* shows the same pattern, although the extent of the apparent errors is much smaller than in Gibril's study. The use of reinterviews probably understates the reporting errors, since there may be a tendency to make the same error twice. On the other hand, limiting the survey to ever-married women would tend to exaggerate the amount of overstatement of age by the youngest women if young married women exaggerate their ages more than young unmarried women, which is very likely. Like their data for males, Caldwell and Igun's data for females aged 15-29 show no bias in the age reports and reasonably high degrees of agreement.

---

* The data from the Indonesian WFS in Table 16 differ from those published in the report of the study (MacDonald et al., 1978). The report used the results of the reinterview, whereas the figures used here are the result of the reconciliation interviews, which were carried out when the first two interviews differed. Reconciliation was attempted whenever the two reported ages differed by at least two years or when other variables were reported differently. The difficulty of depending on reinterviewing is indicated by the amount of agreement between the original interview and the two later estimates. The percentage disagreement between the reinterview and the original is about twice as large as the differences between the reconciliation age and the original, although the pattern of disagreement is the same no matter which set of "improved" ages is used. For the three age groups--15-19, 20-24, and 25-29--the percentage of agreement between the original and the reinterview are 79, 82, and 75, respectively.

We have already discussed evidence from Haiti and Nepal that shows the ages of women around age 20 are biased according to their marital status, and we have presented information from Nepal and Ghana on the relationship between parity and reported age. These conclusions are verified by Caldwell and Igun's study of age reporting in Nigeria. Although their study did not document large errors in reporting or an overall bias in age reporting, the data in Table 17 clearly indicate that age reporting was affected by parity and marital status. These data show that in Nigeria single women aged 20-24 tend to be reported in a younger age group. It also appears that women aged 15-19, and to a lesser extent those aged 20-24, tend to be reported at older ages if they are married or have at least one child.

Some support for this is provided by Table 18, which presents data from the WFS from Indonesia. Although the numbers are small, it appears that there is a tendency for ever-married women aged 20-24 to be reported in an older age group if they have a surviving child. Gibril's analysis also provides some support for a link between parity and reported age, although his approach to the analysis is somewhat indirect.

Although the causes of underenumeration have not been studied as thoroughly as the causes of age misreporting, the basic mechanisms responsible for excessive underenumeration at ages 15-24 are relatively clear. Most of the young adults who are not enumerated in censuses and surveys are probably (1) residents of one-person households, which are often difficult to identify and enumerate, (2) marginal members of households (for example, servants or nonrelatives), who are not reported as such, or (3) persons whose residence is not well established or who are in the process of moving.

TABLE 17 Percentage of Age Misreporting by Age, Marital Status, and Parity, for Women Aged 15-24: Nigeria 1969

		Marital Status and Parity		
True Age	Reported Age[a]	Single, Parity = 0	Married, Parity = 0 and Single, Parity = 1	Married, Parity = 2+
15-19	Exaggerated	7	16	27
	Same	83	79	70
	Understated	10	5	3
20-24	Exaggerated	5	11	14
	Same	81	81	77
	Understated	15	8	9

[a] Ages exaggerated or understated differed from the true age by at least one five-year age group.

Source: Caldwell and Igun, 1971:301.

TABLE 18 Number of Ever-Married Women by Age, Number of Surviving Children, and Misreporting of Age: Indonesia 1976

		Number of Surviving Children				
Age at Reconciliation	Reported Age[a]	0	1	2	3-5	6+
15-19	Exaggerated	1	1	--	--	--
	Same	16	8	1	--	--
	Understated	--	--	--	--	--
20-24	Exaggerated	1	4	--	1	--
	Same	12	28	26	12	--
	Understated	1	1	1	--	--
25-29	Exaggerated	1	--	1	2	1
	Same	5	14	27	40	5
	Understated	--	1	--	2	0

[a] Ages exaggerated or understated differed from the age at reconciliation by at least one five-year age group.

Source: Unpublished data from the 1976 Indonesian Fertility Survey.

The PES of the 1970 census of Korea provides estimates of the amount of underenumeration by single years of age under age 20. Table 19 presents the estimated undercounts for ages 12-19. It is clear from these data that underenumeration increases substantially during the years when first unions are being formed.

Table 20 presents data from the same study on the underenumeration of ever-married women by age and parity. These data clearly indicate that even among ever-married women childless women are more apt to be missed at every age. At the younger ages the childless women are most apt to be newly married and to be recent additions to an existing household or part of a new household. Among the older women, those without children may be living with relatives or serving as employees. The effects of underenumeration on the reported average parities are insignificant, except at ages 15-19 where the large difference is due to the small number of observations. At other ages the differences between the PES and the census are due to errors in the reporting of parity and age and not to differential coverage by parity.

Table 21 presents estimates of undercounts by relation to the head of household from the PES in Paraguay in 1974 and the PES in Korea in 1970. These data show that about 25 percent of all marginal members of households (that is, employees and nonrelatives) were missed in the censuses. A large proportion of the individuals in these categories are probably young adults. The estimated undercounts for migrants in these surveys are also very high; about 20 percent were missed. Young adults are not only very mobile, they are also most apt to be living alone and therefore are easy to miss in a census.

Although the stable population analysis of the data from Paraguay and Liberia (see Tables 8 and 9) showed that

TABLE 19 Percentage Undercount for Ages 12-19: Korea 1970

	Age					
Sex	12	13	14	15	16-17	18-19
Males	2.4	3.4	4.6	6.1	7.2	10.9
Females	3.3	4.4	4.2	8.3	8.9	8.0

Source: Unpublished data from the 1970 PES of Korea.

TABLE 20 Underenumeration of Ever-Married Women by Age and Parity: Korea, 1960 Census

Parity	PES Total	Omitted from Census	Wrongly Included in Census	% Net Under-count	% Net Undercount by Age			
					<20	20-29	30-39	40-49
0	322	44	28	5.0	2.7	3.5	7.7	3.1
1	656	31	31	0.0	0.0	-0.2	1.5	0.0
2	705	28	24	0.6	0.0	0.7	0.8	2.0
3	679	21	16	0.7	--	0.6	0.6	1.5
4	668	12	17	-0.7	--	-1.2	-0.4	0.0
5	679	21	16	1.3	--	3.1	0.4	0.8
6	606	9	9	0.0	--	-4.3	0.4	0.0
7+	1,454	18	6	0.8	--	64.3	0.6	-0.2
PES Reported Average Parity					0.70	2.16	4.87	6.19
Error in Census Due to Net Enumeration Errors					-0.12[a]	+0.01	+0.01	-0.03
Total Difference Between PES and Census					-0.27	-0.20	-0.44	-0.72

[a] The large understatement of average parity at 15-19 in the census is due to the omission of three women with 3, 4, and 5 births, respectively.

Source: Park, 1966: tables 4-A and 9-A.

TABLE 21 Percentage Estimates of Completeness of Enumeration by Relationship to Household Head and by Migrant Status: Paraguay and Korea

Group	Completeness of Enumeration (percent)		
	Paraguay 1974 PES	Korea, 1970 PES	
		Males	Females
Head of Household	93.6	96.8	94.6
Spouse	94.7	--	96.6
Child	91.8	95.7	95.8
Relative	83.8	89.2	92.0
Employee	72.8	--	--
Criada[a]	84.4	--	--
Other non-relative	75.8	75.6	77.6
Nonmigrants	91.9	95.9	95.8
Migrants	81.4	77.0	77.0
Total	91.1	95.1	95.0

[a] Criadas are young girls who work as servants for room and board. They are frequently relatives or friends of the family.

Sources: Paraguay: Marks and Rumford, 1978:182. Korea: Unpublished data from the 1970 PES.

the adjustments for underenumeration did not improve the fit to the stable population model at ages 15-24, it is important to try to determine the impact of underenumeration on these age groups. The finding from the stable analysis merely suggests that the effect of age misreporting on this age group is larger in magnitude and opposite in direction to the effect of underreporting. In addition, since the individuals who are most apt to be missed are the single and childless, the underenumeration in these age groups might bias estimates of fertility rates and of ages at first union and first birth. It is important that future studies of underenumeration in censuses and surveys provide tabulations of the union status and parity of persons who were missed.

REPORTING ERRORS FOR THOSE OVER AGE 30

While age misreporting under age 30 can be easily understood in terms of changes in physical characteristics and social status, the physical and social changes over age 30 are less dramatic and less frequently associated with specific ages. For example, widowhood and divorce are less useful for age estimation than marital status of persons around age 20. Similarly, the physical signs of aging start to become apparent over a much larger range of ages than the changes associated with puberty. In addition, the low proportion of births recorded in most developing countries more than 30 years ago means that birth certificates and baptismal records are rarely available. The use of birth records for those over age 30 is also complicated by the fact that migrations and poor recordkeeping make it very difficult to locate records of those whose birth was registered.

Two characteristic forms of age misreporting have been noted in many populations. The first is a tendency toward heaping on ages ending in the digits zero and five. Since ages ending with zero appear to be chosen much more frequently as age estimates, this can lead to a surplus of persons reported in the age groups 50-54, 60-64, and 70-74. One example of this phenomenon can be seen in Demeny and Shorter's study of the census of Turkey, which presents correction factors based on census survival ratios between the censuses of 1935 and 1940 and between those of 1955 to 1960 (1968:31). Because Turkey had censuses at five-year intervals, the evidence of heaping at ages ending with a zero is easy to demonstrate.

Further evidence of this kind of heaping comes from Gibril's study in Gambia. Table 22 presents a retabulation of his data, which compares the last digit of the true age with the last digit of the reported age for

TABLE 22 Evidence of Digit Preference Among Persons Aged 40-69: Gambia 1971

	Age Reported in Census			
		Percent in Wrong 5-Year Group (by last digit)		
Last Digit of True Age	Percent in Correct 5-Year Group	0-4	5-9	Total Number of Cases
0-4	32	29	39	221
5-9	20	67	13	181

Source: Based on Gibril, 1975:67-68.

persons aged 40-69. These data show a clear tendency for persons whose true age ends with a digit from five to nine to be switched to an age ending with zero through four. This largely reflects movement to a neighboring age group, but it also includes errors of more than one age group. There is no similar tendency for persons whose age ends with a digit from zero to four to be switched to a neighboring age group; in fact, there are almost as many persons whose age was shifted by two groups (29 percent) as there are those shifted by one group (39 percent). This overall pattern is evident in the data for both sexes and provides clear evidence of the shifting of ages to the five-year groups that include zero.

The relationship noted earlier between misreporting of age and parity among women over 30 in Nepal and Ghana (see Table 5) suggests that future attempts to determine the causes of age heaping in the later years of childbearing should consider the reports of age and parity simultaneously. It is important to note that while the data in the Ghanaian survey could have been distorted by a dependence on third-party reports, in the Nepal survey the fertility histories were collected directly from the women themselves.

In addition to age heaping, there are frequently errors due to exaggeration of the ages of older persons. In U.S. censuses, this is most obvious in the exaggeration of the number of persons reported as being over age 100 (Myers, 1966; Rosenwaike, 1979). It is less obvious but most certainly a problem at younger ages too. The exaggeration of age over age 60 is apparent in several census survival studies of the United States, but the Medicare Record Check of the 1970 census indicated that understatement of age was more common among those aged 65-74. In summarizing the evaluation of the 1960 census, Siegel and Zelnick concluded, "As of now, we do not know the extent, or even the direction, of error in the census count 65 and over" (1966:79). Sorting out the age misreporting errors from the coverage errors is even more difficult. It appears that age exaggeration in the United States is clearly a problem, although the age at which it becomes significant is hard to pinpoint.

In developing countries, Gibril's study once again provides the most reliable evidence of age exaggeration. Table 23 presents a summary of his findings. It is clear from his data that in Gambia age exaggeration among men is a problem as early as ages 30-39, where more than half of the men are reported in an older five-year age group. In

Table 23 Age Misreporting at Ages 30-69: Gambia 1971

		Reported 5-Year Age Group (percentages)					
Sex	True Age Group	2+ lower	1 lower	Same	1 higher	2+ higher	Average Error (in number of 5-year age groups)
Male	30-39	7	12	26	41	13	0.46[a]
	40-49	6	20	27	28	19	0.53
	50-59	11	8	29	19	33	0.92
	60-69	5	10	23	20	43	0.85
Female	30-39	14	25	32	25	5	-0.20
	40-49	17	23	22	23	15	0.39
	50-59	12	18	25	23	23	0.34
	60-69	9	9	18	11	52	1.00

[a] This average excludes two individuals aged 30-34 who were reported as aged 0-4.

Source: Gibril, 1975:67-68.

contrast, there appears to be a very slight tendency for women to understate their age at ages 30-39 and to exaggerate their age at ages 40-59. Over age 60, age exaggeration is clearly a grave problem for both sexes.

5 The Effect of Errors on the Estimation of Fertility and Mortality Rates: Problems and Recommended Solutions

The errors in reported age distributions all have some effect on the estimation of fertility and mortality rates for developing countries. There are three approaches to dealing with these effects. The first is to determine which of the various estimation techniques are most vulnerable to age distribution distortions and to give more weight to estimates from the more robust techniques. A second approach is to try to determine the direction of the bias in the estimates from each technique and to adjust the estimates for that bias. Alternatively, various estimates can be used as maximum or minimum estimates according to their overall bias. A third approach is to estimate the effects of content and coverage errors on the data and to adjust for those biases before applying the estimation procedures. The sections below describe how age distribution distortions affect each of the major estimation techniques and suggest which of these three compensation approaches are most useful in each case.

THE EFFECT OF AGE DISTRIBUTION DISTORTIONS ON STABLE POPULATION ANALYSIS

Of all estimation techniques, stable population analysis has been the most carefully examined for the effects of age distribution distortions. The analysis of age distributions in U.N. Manual IV, designed specifically to improve the use of stable population analysis, led to recommendations on which of the stable estimates are apt to be biased in specific directions and on how to select one stable estimate from among all possible estimates.

The evidence on patterns of age misreporting discussed in the previous section support an alternative approach to the use of stable population estimation of fertility rates. The emerging evidence suggests that it might be possible to develop some standard patterns of age misreporting and relative underenumeration, which could be applied to a variety of countries. For example, the evidence presented in Table 1 suggests that the population over age 35 is generally enumerated more completely than other age groups. These data suggest that it would not be unreasonable to adjust a reported age distribution for a relative overcount of 2 to 3 percent at all ages over 35.

A second example comes from the data on Korea and Paraguay (Table 21), which demonstrate that the degree of underenumeration is closely related to the relationship to the head of household. In particular, both studies showed about a 7 percent relative undercount for relatives other than spouse and child and about a 20 percent undercount for nonrelatives. If this pattern can be substantiated by further studies, it would be reasonable to adjust reported age distributions for the underenumeration rates by relationship to household head. (Naturally, this would also involve adjusting the number of close family members for a relative 1 percent overcount.)

Obviously, such an approach to adjusting recorded age distributions would have to be substantiated through further studies, and if different synthetic approaches yield different estimates, the analyst must decide which adjustment or average of adjustments to accept. It should be noted, however, that all of these adjustments would probably be slight in comparison with the gross distortions that are often observed.

To demonstrate how such an approach would work, we have applied it to the population of males from the 1970 census of Ghana. Several different approaches to adjusting the age distribution were tested. The first approach was to adjust the population over age 35 for an estimated 3 percent relative overcount. This adjusted age distribution was then used to calculate estimates of the crude birth rate (CBR) using Coale and Demeny's

"West" model life table level 13 and the assumption that life expectancy increased from 38 years in 1948 to 48.5 years in 1968 (Gaisie, 1976:13). These estimates can then be compared with similar estimates based on the reported age distribution. The results, presented in Table 24, demonstrate that the adjustment increases the consistency of the estimates slightly and increases the median CBR estimate by about 0.5 births per 1,000 population.

A second approach adjusted the age distribution by assuming that there was a 1 percent relative overcount among close relatives of the head of household (including the heads of households, their spouses, children, and parents), a 7 percent relative undercount of other relatives, and a 10 percent undercount of nonrelatives. This adjustment also increased the consistency of the estimates and increased the estimated CBR slightly.

Since Caldwell's research showed that about 4 percent of the population aged 0-4 in 1960 exaggerated their age in 1960, we can test the effect of an increase in the proportion under age 5. Adding this adjustment to the reported data and to each of the adjusted age distributions leads to a further increase in the estimated CBR and increases the inconsistency among the CBR estimates based on the reported age distribution.

Although more research is required before these kinds of adjustments can be made routinely before using the age distribution to estimate fertility rates, several observations are justified. First, these rather ad hoc adjustments all increase the consistency among the eight CBR estimates. Although the changes are not large, they are significant enough to warrant further tests of this approach. Second, each of the tested adjustments leads to an increase in the median CBR estimate. This finding lends support to Krotki's concern that the use of stable or quasi-stable models will lead to underestimates of the CBR (Krotki, 1969). The most extreme example, that using Caldwell's adjustment and the adjustment for the 3 percent relative overcount over age 35, leads to a median CBR estimate 1.5 points higher than the median estimate based on the reported age distribution. The evidence from this test and the previous tests using data from Paraguay and Liberia (Tables 8 and 9) suggest that stable and quasi-stable estimates of the CBR might frequently be biased downward by about one point per thousand due to age-selective underenumeration.

TABLE 24 Quasi-Stable Population Tests of Adjustments for Age Distribution Distortions: Ghanaian Males, 1970

Part A. Adjustments Applied to Ages 5-40

	Reported Distribution		Adjustment Based on 3% Overcount of Ages 35+		Adjustment Based on Relationship to Head of Household	
Age	C(a)	CBR	C(a)	CBR	C(a)	CBR
5	18.32	46.99	18.44	47.33	18.32	46.99
10	35.46	51.39	35.70	51.84	35.44	51.35
15	47.57	50.40	47.89	50.90	47.61	50.46
20	56.97	48.84	57.35	49.42	57.16	49.14
25	64.16	46.77	64.59	47.37	64.48	47.22
30	70.99	46.04	71.46	46.75	71.34	46.56
35	77.19	45.95	77.71	46.83	77.52	46.50
40	82.41	45.77	82.76	46.44	82.68	46.29
Median CBR:		46.88		47.35		47.11
Mid-Range:		2.80		2.67		2.58

Part B. With the Addition of Caldwell's Adjustment to the Population 0-4

Age 5:	19.05	49.12	19.18	49.56	19.05	49.12
Median CBR:		47.81		48.17		48.40
Mid-Range:		3.08		2.58		2.76

Note: See text for details of assumptions about mortality levels and for details of adjustments. Unlike Tables 8 and 9, this table presents only eight CBR estimates, because the tables for adjusting the CBR estimates for the mortality declines cover only the first eight estimates (United Nations, 1967:120).

To be able to extend this approach, more information is required on the characteristics of individuals who are most apt to be missed by a census and of those whose ages are misreported. It may be that standard adjustments for these errors should be based on marital status, parity, or education rather than relationship to household head. However, it seems that this approach of making minimum adjustments to the age distribution based on standard expectations about the kinds of people who are apt to be missed or reported incorrectly can improve the fertility estimates made from stable population analysis.

AGE MISREPORTING AND THE BRASS "GROWTH BALANCE" TECHNIQUE

Brass has recommended a technique for adjusting reported age-specific death rates for underreporting of deaths by comparing the population over a given age with the death rate for the population over that age (1975:118-123). To test the sensitivity of this technique to age misreporting, Rashad (1978) conducted a simulation of age misreporting. She tested two models: one with the same pattern of misreporting for the population and the deaths, the other with two different patterns. Her simulations show that the CDR estimated from the Brass method can easily be off by 1 or 2 points per thousand in the presence of age misreporting. She also demonstrated that smoothing the age distributions of the total population and the deaths separately before applying the Brass technique tends to increase the error in the estimated CDR. The reason for this is that the technique is itself a smoothing technique. The use of a mechanical smoothing procedure before applying Brass's technique is less efficient than relying simply on the technique alone, because unlike the usual smoothing procedures, the technique is based on a mathematical model of the expected relationship between the distribution of deaths and the distribution of the population.

THE EFFECTS OF AGE DISTRIBUTION ERRORS ON THE BRASS TECHNIQUES FOR ESTIMATING FERTILITY AND CHILD MORTALITY

The Brass procedures for estimating fertility and child mortality were designed to capitalize on the fact that the fertility experience of young women and the mortality experience of their children are good indicators of recent fertility and mortality. However, by relying heavily on the parity, number of deceased children, and recent fertility reported by young women, the Brass procedures become very vulnerable to the gross errors in age reporting among women aged 15-29. If age reporting errors were random, it is unlikely that they would cause biases in the estimates of fertility and child mortality; however, as we have seen in earlier sections, they are closely linked to parity and union status. Of the three variables needed for the Brass procedures, parity is probably the one most closely related to age reporting and recent fertility is probably the least. Whether biases are introduced by age misreporting related to child survival rates is not clear.

The distributions of average parity by single years of age for Nepal and the Ashanti region of Ghana (Table 5) show clearly the effect of age estimates based on parity. In using Brass's approach to estimating fertility, the question is: To what extent are the estimates of P2 and P3 (the average parities at ages 20-24 and 25-29) biased by this misreporting? For the Brass estimation of child mortality, the questions are: How does this misreporting bias the estimate of the ratio of P1 to P2 (the ratio of parity at 15-19 to parity at 20-24) and the ratio of P2 to P3; how does age misreporting affect the reported proportions of children dead by ages of mothers; and how do these effects interact?

One way to look for evidence that biases in fertility and mortality estimates are due to age misreporting is to produce estimates for a population using several different classifications of age. If the data are reported properly, then the fertility and mortality estimates should be the same whether we use the age groups 15-19, 20-24, and 25-29 or groups 18-22, 23-27, and 28-32. We can use multipliers based on Trussell's equations for the procedure (Hill et al., 1981) as long as the five-year age groupings used for P1, P2, and P3 are the same as those used for the proportions deceased. If the estimates from these different age groupings are significantly different, this would be evidence that the distortions in the age distribution are related to parity in ways that would bias the estimates of the demographic rates.

Although the procedure outlined above can provide evidence of misreporting biases, close agreement among the various estimates would not prove a lack of bias. For example, if the women 15-19 who are wrongly classified as 20-24 had lower parity than the average for women 20-24 and higher parity than the average for women 15-19, both P1 and P2 would be biased downward. If the same kind of mechanism operated between ages 20-24 and 25-29, then both P2 and P3 would lead to estimates of fertility that would be biased downward. If the exaggeration of age were smooth (that is, if similar proportions were shifted from 19 to 20 and from 20 to 21, etc.), then all age groupings would lead to estimates with similar biases. Fortunately, it appears from Table 5 that the age exaggeration is not smooth and leads to a surplus of women at ages 20 and 25.

To look for evidence of biases due to misreporting, we have produced four sets of estimates of fertility and child mortality using different age groupings of the data from the Ashanti region of Ghana. Using the four age groupings and both P2/F2 and P3/F3, we derive eight estimates of the total fertility rate. These estimates, presented in Table 25, range from 7.61 to 8.06, indicating that age misreporting is distorting the Brass fertility estimates, however differences of this size (roughly 6 percent in this case) are not critical for most policy-oriented uses of fertility estimates. It is important to note that the difference between the P2/F2 and P3/F3 estimates for each of the four age groupings is small, ranging from 0.15 to 0.19, although the relationship between the P2/F2 and P3/F3 estimates changes. It is also interesting to note that the estimates based on traditional age groups are on average similar to those based on 18-22, 23-27, and 28-32. Table 25 also presents estimates of life expectancy at birth based on Brass estimates of q(1), q(2), q(3), and q(5) using each of four different age groupings. The differences in the e_o estimates among the four age groupings are smaller than those among the four q(x) values.

The results of these tests and similar tests by Hill et al. (1980) suggest that age heaping may not be a major problem in using the Brass methods for estimating fertility and child mortality. This conclusion is

TABLE 25 Estimates of Fertility and Child Mortality Derived from Different Age Groupings: Ashanti Region, Ghana 1971

Parameter	Basis of Estimate	Age Range for P1 15-19	16-20	17-21	18-22
Total Fertility Rate	P2/F2	7.78	7.91	7.70	7.61
	P3/F3	7.62	8.06	7.86	7.80
Life Expectancy at Birth (e_0)	q(1)	57.10	55.86	55.07	55.26
	q(2)	53.49	53.49	53.49	52.91
	q(3)	51.58	50.47	50.59	50.47
	q(5)	49.63	49.21	49.21	48.98

Source: Unpublished data from the Ghana 1971 Supplemental Enquiry.

supported by recent evidence (Ewbank, 1980) that a large part of the inconsistencies between Brass-type estimates of survival to ages 1, 2, 3, 5, and 10 probably are due to mortality differences by parity and to recent fluctuations in mortality rather than to age misreporting.

Nevertheless, comparing estimates based on different age groupings may prove to be useful in several ways. First, it may be a relatively simple way of determining a reasonable range of estimates. It is too early to speculate on how this range is related to the actual value, but simulations may provide a way to interpret the differences among the estimates. Secondly, the different estimates can be used as a way to test whether the kinds of misreporting built into simulations are a reasonable approximation of reality. Unless the simulation can produce single-year distributions similar to the reported values, the results of the simulation may not be useful.

Third, it may be that simulation studies will be able to determine which of the age groupings provides the least biased estimates. If the age misreporting is due mostly to ages being exaggerated from 15-19 up to 20, from 20-24 up to 25, and from 25-29 up to 30, then the 16-20 grouping would yield the most reliable estimates. It is important to note that this grouping also yields the highest estimates of fertility. This is probably due to the fact that the 15- to 19-year-old women of relatively high parity tend to be reported as aged 20. If these women also lower the average for the 20-24 age group, and if similar effects occur at ages 25 and 30, then the 16-20 grouping could provide the most accurate estimates.

Two researchers, van de Walle (1968) and Santow (1977), have used simple simulations to examine the impact of age misreporting on Brass estimation procedures. Van de Walle tested the effects of various simple patterns of age misreporting on the Brass method of estimating fertility from data on reported average parity and reported recent births. By simulating the effect of several relationships between reported age, parity, and recent fertility, he examined the possible biases in ratios of parity (P_i for age group i) to cumulated recent fertility (F_i) for different age groups. Although his efforts were hampered by a lack of information on the relationship between age misreporting, parity, and recent fertility, van de Walle's approach, which was also tested in Pakistan by Karim and Iqbal (1975), provides a valuable model for future simulation research on the impact of age misreporting.

Santow's study added age misstatement to a micro-simulation model of fertility to analyze the impact on the Brass estimates of child mortality. One of the simulations involved shifting upward the age of half the women whose parity was above average for their age group. This was done in all three five-year groups: 15-19, 20-24, and 25-29. A second simulation increased the age of every woman with above-average parity.

Table 26 presents Santow's estimates of the female life expectancies at birth (e_o), which correspond in Coale and Demeny's "North" model life tables to the q(x) values from each simulation. For the moderate level of mortality, the e_o values estimated from simulations with no misreporting and those estimated from simulations with half of the ages shifted differ on average by about one year. For the higher-level mortality simulations, the differences are about the same. The mixed simulation for the medium level of mortality involved shifting all of the above-average parity women aged 15-19 and half of those aged 20-24. This simulation is interesting because it shows a q(1) estimate that is biased in the opposite direction from the q(2) and q(3) estimates.

The pattern of age misreporting that Santow used in his simulations is very simple. One possibility not examined by Santow is that age misreporting might be

TABLE 26 Simulations of the Effect of Age Misreporting on Brass Child Mortality Estimates

	Female Life Expectancy at Birth (e_0)			
		With Age Misreporting		
Parameter	With No Age Misreporting	Half Shift	Full Shift	Mixed
Moderate Mortality				
q(1)	61.4	63.5	66.2	65.9
q(2)	60.6	61.4	64.2	60.3
q(3)	60.3	60.3	60.7	59.4
High Mortality				
q(1)	45.3	44.1	50.4	--
q(2)	38.2	40.9	46.6	--
q(3)	37.3	38.8	39.5	--

Source: Santow, 1977. Santow's q(x) values have been used to find estimates of overall mortality using the Coale-Demeny "North" model life tables. See text for explanation of shifts.

related not only to a woman's parity but also to the number of her children who are deceased. There are two ways in which this might occur. First, if a woman's first and only child is now deceased and she is not in a union, there is a good chance that that child might not be recorded. Therefore, women aged 20-24 whose only child is dead might be classified as aged 15-19. The primary result of this would be to bias upward the proportion surviving among the children of women aged 20-24.

A second case that should be considered is that of a woman aged 19 whose firstborn died. In a population with an early age at first birth, it might not be unusual to find a woman aged 15-19 with one child. However, if the birth intervals are long (possibly because of prolonged breast-feeding), then it might be very unusual to find a woman aged 15-19 with more than one child. A woman whose firstborn dies at a very early age will not be breast-feeding and thus is likely to have a second child quickly. Therefore, of those women aged 15-19 who have a first birth, those whose child dies will be more likely to have a second birth before age 20. Since those aged 15-19 with two births are more apt to have their age exaggerated, it follows that women whose firstborn dies may also be more apt to have their age exaggerated. This would lead to an understatement of mortality among the children of women aged 15-19 and to an exaggeration of mortality for the children of women aged 20-24. It would also affect the reported values of P1 and P2.

One difficulty with Santow's simulations is that each simulation was run only once and the results reflect the effects of both misreporting and of random elements from the simulation. To overcome this, Santow has run significance tests on the differences. Of the figures presented in Table 26, only the differences between the no-shift and full-shift models for the high mortality case are significant.

In conclusion, the Santow simulations produced biases similar to the differences found in the Ashanti data using the different age groupings. The simulations both suggest that the biases due to age misreporting may be no larger than those due to other problems with the Brass method. However, further simulation work is needed to fully demonstrate the nature of the biases introduced by such data errors.

THE EFFECT OF AGE MISREPORTING ON THE BRASS PARENTAL SURVIVAL TECHNIQUE FOR ESTIMATING MORTALITY

In the discussion of age misreporting for the population over age 30, it was noted that exaggeration of age is clearly a problem at the oldest ages, but it is not clear at what age exaggeration becomes a major problem. Gibril's data show that males in Gambia tend to have their age exaggerated by an average of one half of a five-year age group at ages 30-49 and by a full five-year age group at ages over 50. Gambian females apparently understate their age slightly until age 40; at ages 40-59 their ages are exaggerated by about one third of a five-year age group and by a full age group over age 60. These distortions at high ages lead to biases in the estimation of adult mortality. In countries like Gambia, therefore, for these age groups more reliable estimates of adult mortality may be derived from reports of parental survival, using Brass's parental survival technique.

Table 27 presents the results of a simple simulation to test the sensitivity of this technique to age exaggeration among those aged 30 and over. The simulation assumes that the true mortality of a population of males is given by Brass's African Standard life table. However, because of age misreporting, what we think is the proportion surviving from age 30 to age 60 actually

TABLE 27 Simulation of the Sensitivity of the Brass Parental Survival Method to Age Misreporting

True Age x	Probability of Surviving from Age 30 to Age x[a] $l(x)/l(30)$	Reported Age[b] $x + 2.5$	Logit Fit to Standard with $l(x)/l(30)$ and $l(2)$[c]		
			α	β	$\hat{e}_0 - e_0^s$
57.5	0.6552	60.0	0.071	0.912	2.25
62.5	0.5498	65.0	0.074	0.909	2.33
67.5	0.4284	70.0	0.076	0.906	2.38
72.5	0.2973	75.0	0.085	0.894	2.70

[a] From Brass's African Standard life table.

[b] Because of the assumed pattern of age exaggeration by respondents, survey results will lead us to believe that x is 2.5 years greater than is actually the case.

[c] Fit to Brass's African Standard using actual $l(2)$ from the Brass Standard. If the exaggeration of x is unimportant, then α will be close to zero, β will be close to 1.0, and the estimated life expectancy ($\hat{e}_0$) will be close to the value for the standard (e_0^s).

represents the proportion surviving from age 30 to age 57.5. This is equivalent to an average exaggeration of age by 2.5 years among men who are actually aged 27.5. (In this simulation, it was assumed that we know the correct value of l(2). Life expectancies were then calculated from the values of l(x)/l(30) and l(2) by finding the values of α and β for the logit life table that are consistent with the data, using a procedure similar to that described by Brass (1975:105). These parameters were then used to produce an estimated life table. (For reference, see "logit" in the glossary; for a more complete description of the procedure, see Hill et al., 1981.)

The results of the simulation demonstrate that exaggeration of age has a significant effect on the estimated life expectancy. Age exaggeration of approximately 2.5 years will bias the estimate of life expectancy upward by approximately the same amount. This result is what would be expected. Since the ages of the respondents are exaggerated, we are led to believe that their parents have survived to an older age than is really the case, therefore, the procedure underestimates mortality. The exact amount of the bias will depend on the shape of the life table survivorship curve over the ages in question. This simulation provides only a preliminary estimate of the effect of age misreporting on the parental survival technique. It may be that the actual effect is quite different from these estimates, especially if age exaggeration is more (or less) common among those whose parents are deceased than it is for the population as a whole.

Age misreporting has another less obvious though potentially important impact on the estimation of mortality. Because age misreporting is a problem at the oldest ages in almost all populations, it is very difficult to establish the shape of the survivorship curve at the oldest ages. This was made clear in a U.S. study that matched death certificates with census records on a case-by-case basis (U.S. Public Health Service, 1968). The study demonstrated that at the oldest ages the ages reported on the death certificate and the census form were frequently different. For U.S. nonwhites, mortality rates calculated using the age reported in the census were significantly lower than those calculated using the death certificate age for the numerator. This study demonstrates that determining the age pattern of mortality at the oldest ages is difficult even when the registration is essentially complete.

The standard pattern of mortality that we use for the logit model must be based on reliable mortality data for populations with a mortality pattern broadly similar to the population being studied. In practice, however, model tables for high levels of mortality are likely to be distorted by age misreporting, too. Thus, the fit of the data to the model may be misleadingly satisfactory. In short, the Brass parental survival method may be potentially biased not only by age misreporting in the population under study, but also by the effects of age misreporting on the standard life table used to smooth the survivorship estimates obtained.

6 Conclusions and Recommendations for Future Research

Since the publication of Manual IV (United Nations, 1967) and The Demography of Tropical Africa (Brass et al., 1968), numerous studies have provided insights into the patterns of age misreporting and age-selective underenumeration. Although these studies do not drastically alter the conclusions reached in previous surveys, they do clarify the sources and patterns of misreporting and help quantify the magnitude of various types of errors; in particular, they have helped clarify the relative importance of content and coverage errors.

The first of this report's three purposes was to review the available studies on the sources, patterns, and consequences of age misreporting and age-selective underenumeration. Its second aim was to suggest ways in which information on reporting errors can be used simultaneously to adjust existing data and to study the relative importance of different types of errors. Two of these suggestions are (1) to combine PES data on errors with stable or quasi-stable population analysis and (2) to compare Santow's simulations of the impact of misreporting on the Brass method of estimating child mortality with tests conducted by using different five-year age groupings on the results of the Brass method.

The third purpose of this paper is to recommend ways of improving how we deal with reported age distributions and to suggest directions for future research in this area. These recommendations and conclusions are as follows:

1. One crucial step toward improving the quality of reported age distributions is to determine as well as possible what type of questions are most likely to yield reliable age reports in the particular population being surveyed. The questions posed to the respondents should be grounded in an awareness of features of the culture that are likely to affect their knowledge of and willingness to report their ages. Pretesting questionnaires on a sample of the population is one essential way to check the efficacy of different questions about age, and consultation with researchers knowledgeable about the anthropology of the population is useful.

2. The effect of interviewers on age reporting should not be underestimated. Evidence suggests that the quality of age reporting depends strongly on the educational level of the interviewers as well as on their previous experience and the training provided them. Higher investments in the recruitment and careful training of interviewers are likely to produce greater consistency and accuracy in age reporting.

3. Whenever possible, questionnaires should be designed to eliminate interviewers' performing arithmetic in the field. The chance that additional error will be introduced is greater when intermediate calculations are performed between collecting information directly from respondents and subjecting it to analysis.

4. Efforts to improve age reporting in surveys through the use of local calendars of historical events are probably a waste of time and money. The one exception to this is the use of calendars for estimating the ages of children under age 10. The evidence, which is reviewed in the appendix, suggests that these calendars are rarely used properly in large surveys and censuses and that when they are used they are apt to lead to biased estimates of ages for adults. In large surveys, efforts to improve age reporting probably should be limited to requesting birth certificates and other documents that help in estimating ages. Although this may prove useful in only a small proportion of the population, there is evidence that such documents are

underutilized in areas where enumerators do not expect people to have them. Similarly, some of the larger errors might be reduced by efforts to decrease the amount of proxy reporting. It would also be helpful to have more complete tests of the usefulness of estimating age from such data as duration of marriage and age of oldest child, as in Agarwala's 1960 analysis of the Mysore Survey.

5. In censuses, more attention should be paid to ensuring a complete count and to estimating the completeness of the count. For example, simply reminding respondents that servants and employees living in the household are to be reported might improve the accuracy of the reported proportion aged 15-19 more than using special techniques for age reporting. Although in many societies age misreporting is probably more common and more of a problem than underenumeration, in many situations the latter is more easily measured. In this regard, we agree with Marks's conclusion that post-enumeration surveys should be designed primarily to measure coverage errors and not content errors.

6. Published analyses of studies of age misreporting and age-selective underenumeration rarely provide the kinds of information needed to understand the sources of the errors and their potential importance in other populations. For example, none of the PES studies reviewed here included any tabulations that can be used to understand the relationship between age misreporting and parity of young women. There were also no tabulations of underenumeration by marital status and only one tabulation of underenumeration by parity. If we are to develop better models of misreporting and underenumeration and methods for adjusting for their effects, we need better information about what kinds of individuals are missed or misreported. Tabulations similar to Tables 17, 18, 20, and 21 could be derived from data tapes of existing studies. These issues have probably been neglected because most researchers are interested primarily in adjusting the data from the particular survey on which they are working. In the process, more general questions, which might prove applicable to other populations, frequently have been overlooked.

7. Stable population analysis and census survival approaches to studying age distribution distortions have been neglected recently. The 1970 round of censuses opened up new research possibilities in a number of countries that now have two comparable censuses for the first time. A comparison of the deviations from stability or the patterns of census survival rates from various countries could be used to examine such questions as: (1) What is the effect of various questionnaire designs on the quality of reported age distributions? and (2) What is the relationship between the apparent shortage of females reported at ages 15-19 and the ages at first marriage and first birth? Although there are numerous problems with these techniques, they have two important advantages: first, they allow new information to be obtained from existing data; and second, they can be applied to a large number of populations and therefore can provide information about the variety in patterns of distortions in age distributions.

8. There have been far too few comparisons of the results of studies of age misreporting and coverage errors and the results of studies that use stable population and census survival approaches. Comparisons of this type using U.S. data have raised serious questions about the usefulness of the results of studies of age misreporting and coverage errors. The comparisons in Tables 7, 8, 9, and 24 and the comparison of Gibril, Pison, and Caldwell's estimates of age misreporting among children (Table 10) with census data from 19 African censuses (Table 13) demonstrate that extreme caution is needed before the results of these studies can be generalized to other populations or even used to adjust census data for the same population. In addition, if the survey results do prove to be reliable and more widely applicable, combining the results with stable population and census survival techniques will provide a clearer picture of the errors and deviations from stability that remain in the data after the one adjustment has been made.

9. The studies by Gibril, Pison, Caldwell, and Murray suggest that studies with moderate sample size that match age reports and birth certificates or baptismal records can produce valuable results even in countries where such records are rare. For example, although Caldwell's study was based on data only from towns included in the birth registration area of Ghana, the results seem to be useful

in understanding age misreporting for all of Ghana. The need for further studies of this sort is clear when we consider that the studies by Gibril, Pison, and Caldwell are the best of their type and provide our clearest evidence of patterns of age misreporting, yet all three are studies of West African populations. The almost complete lack of such studies in South America and Asia threatens us with the possibility that our models of age misreporting may be overly culture-bound. Murray's study of Haiti, which is unpublished, suggests the possibility that other anthropologists may have similar unpublished data that could help answer questions about the nature of reporting errors in other parts of the world. Comparable data might be available from historical studies that include multiple sources of information on the same individual.

10. The simulations by Rashad, van de Walle, and Santow of the effect of age misreporting on the Brass techniques and the tests displayed in Tables 25 and 27 are preliminary steps toward the use of simulation to elucidate the biases in existing estimates of mortality and fertility. The preceding discussions suggest three useful aims for future simulation studies: (1) they should provide simulations of single-year distributions that can be compared to data similar to those given in Table 5 to test the realism of the simulation; (2) they should test the robustness of estimates based on alternative age groupings, as demonstrated in Table 25; and (3) they should compare the effects of alternative patterns of reporting, especially patterns that indicate a relationship between age misreporting and the underenumeration of such characteristics as survival of children and survival of parents.

SUMMARY

Although age misreporting and selective underenumeration will continue to plague demographic studies, the recent evidence suggests that we can do a much better job of adjusting data for misreporting errors and of developing techniques for estimating fertility and mortality that are less sensitive to age reporting errors. Unfortunately, all too frequently we settle for estimates that we realize are affected in some unknown way by misreporting and underenumeration. Although age misreporting and age-selective underreporting are only two sources of error in our estimates, the preceding discussion makes it clear that they are not trivial sources of error and that there are ways of reducing such errors.

Age misreporting and selective underenumeration frequently are viewed as important but uninteresting problems. The fine research carried out by a number of scholars in various populations clearly demonstrates that with carefully planned field work and thoughtful analysis, combined with comparison of results from different sources and techniques, we can expect to produce improved ways of dealing with one of demography's most frustrating problems.

Appendix

The Usefulness of Historical Calendars

> . . . and we, in our researches, must either stop at the conditional and apparent beginnings, confusing them with the real beginning, in the same way that Joseph confused the man from Ur on the one hand with his father, and on the other hand with Joseph's own great-grandfather, or else we must keep on being lured from one time coulisse to the next, backwards and backwards into the immeasurable.
>
> -- Thomas Mann,
> Joseph and His Brothers

The historical calendar of local events has frequently been used as a technique for estimating ages in populations where knowledge of ages and birth dates is rare. Preparing useful calendars is time-consuming and their use lengthens the interviewing process, so it is important to determine whether and when these extra costs are justifiable in terms of the expected improvement in age reporting.

Several major problems exist with the use of historical calendars. The first is one that greatly limits the usefulness of calendars in large surveys: the difficulty of producing lists of events that are known to the respondents in each local area. In many countries a calendar of national events is not very useful for estimating ages. People may not be sufficiently aware of national events to remember even the most important ones (Gibril, 1979:36; Seltzer, 1973:16). This is probably especially true in relatively new nations and in countries in which large parts of the population are illiterate and do not have access to radios. Secondly, even when people remember events of national significance, those events may be so far removed from their daily lives that they are unable to relate them chronologically to personal events such as births or marriages.

While it is possible to produce useful calendars, it is time-consuming and expensive (Seltzer, 1973:16). In fact, unless the calendars are created under careful supervision and unless plenty of time is allowed for the process, they may simply not be constructed. For example, in both the 1960 census of Ghana and the 1967 census of Tanzania a short calendar of national events was given to each enumerator. In both cases this short calendar was to be supplemented by a list of local events constructed by the enumerators. There is no evidence as to how many of these local calendars were ever constructed (Gil et al., 1971:xxxvi; United Republic of Tanzania, 1971:87). In the 1973 National Demographic Survey of Tanzania, local calendars were to be constructed in each of the 72 rural sample areas before the interviewing began. Because of a shortage of time, calendars were produced for only about half of the clusters, and some of these included only a few events in addition to the national calendar (Ewbank and Hogan, n.d.).

The difficulties involved in producing a proper calendar are made clear by Scott and Sabagh's description of the kind of calendar that is necessary for accurate age reporting. They maintain that a calendar should contain "events covering every, or almost every, year of the past century or so" and that monthly events are required for the most recent two years (1970:94-95). This level of detail is particularly important for the 15 years prior to the survey. Unless the calendar includes at least one event for each of the prior 15 years, it is unlikely to be an improvement over guesses based on appearances.

A second problem with using calendars is that they are very difficult to use properly and require a great deal of patience and persistence. Gibril reports that interviewers in Gambia tended to avoid using the calendars because of the complexities and because some of the respondents resisted the calendar approach (1979:36). For example, some respondents refused to answer questions about events after having already stated an estimated age; some appeared to resent this probing because it implied that the answer they had already given might be wrong. In Ghana there was apparently the same problem in the 1960 census. Interviewers were trained to use several methods of age estimation with the suggested order of preference being: birth or baptismal certificates, historical events, local events, and facial appearance. Experience in the pre-census survey showed that "a large percentage of the enumerators (subsequently, main census field supervisors) even in the southern portion of Ghana resorted to the last method"--that is, to estimating age from appearance (Ghana, 1964:388).

Scott and Sabagh studied the use of local calendars in rural areas during the 1961-1962 Multi-Purpose Survey in Morocco. They too discovered that the calendar was not always used. During the first round of the survey they found that "age was often being estimated at sight, or by report, and the columns concerning the calendar were being completed afterwards to fit this estimate" (1970:95). In the second round, when the interview procedure was revised and more supervision was provided, they found that the calendars were used to estimate the ages of 87 percent of the men and 75 percent of the women. The calendar was used least in the case of men aged 15-29 (70 percent) and women aged 15 and over (about 60 percent). They attribute these low percentages to the fact that calendars cannot really be used to estimate the ages of adults who are not seen by the enumerator. In Morocco, male interviewers are apparently not able to interview a large proportion of the adult women, and many men aged 15-29 may be temporarily absent (1970:96).

As was stated previously, in the 1973 National Demographic Survey of Tanzania there was an attempt to produce a local calendar for each of the 70 rural clusters. However, because of time constraints the quality of the local calendars varied greatly. Analysis of the data reporting using the U.N. index of misreporting (Ewbank and Hogan, n.d.:30-31) demonstrated that the most important factor determining the smoothness of the age distributions was the education level of the interviewers. The interviewer team with the lowest level of education was responsible for the interviewing in four of the six regions with the highest U.N. scores for age misreporting (out of a total of 18 regions). However, even the best teams produced age distributions that were heavily affected by misreporting. Moreover, there was no correlation between the number of events listed in the local calendar and the age reporting index for that area. This suggests that in large surveys the difficulty of producing local calendars and training and supervising interviewers might well reduce the impact of the calendars to the point where they are not cost effective.

There is evidence to suggest that even when local calendars are carefully produced and used they may not produce particularly good estimates of age. For example, Gibril notes that in Gambia there was often confusion between two events in the calendars, which complicated their use. He specifically mentions confusion between the first and second world wars, between the time of independence and the gaining of republican status, and between the date of the coming to Gambia of a river boat as opposed to the arrival of a ferry (1979:33). Scott and Sabagh also discuss this problem and describe a case in which confusion between two similar events in the calendar led to one woman's age being misreported by 15 years even though she was educated and clearly knew her exact age (1970:104). Gibril points out that even when an event is remembered properly, there is still the problem of establishing the person's age at the time of the remembered event (1979:37).

More serious evidence of poor results from a carefully prepared and applied calendar comes from Caldwell and Igun's study of three approaches to age estimation in Nigeria. In their survey, the interviewers first recorded the age stated by the respondent. They then used a carefully constructed historical calendar to estimate the age. Finally, they tried to solicit a list of at least six persons living in the area who were the same age as each individual interviewed. They used this list of six contemporaries to determine two estimates of the person's age. The first assigned the individual the modal age reported by his six contemporaries. The second approach tried to determine which of the seven individuals (the respondent plus the six contemporaries) was most likely to have reported correctly and used that person's age as the correct one. The results were then analyzed by comparing the first reported age to the age estimated using the calendar and to the two estimates based on cohort reports, the modal age and the most reliable or "best" cohort age.

Table A-1 presents the errors in responses to the

TABLE A-1 Percentage of Agreement Between Ages Reported in Response to a Simple Question on Age and Ages Estimated by Alternative Approaches: Nigeria

	Males			Females		
Reported Age	Historical Calendar	Modal Age of Cohorts	"Best" Cohort Estimate	Historical Calendar	Modal Age of Cohorts	"Best" Cohort Estimate
0-4	98	93	93	98	93	94
5-9	93	90	91	94	90	91
10-14	87	84	86	88	85	81
15-19	87	84	83	88	85	81
20-24	83	84	83	84	81	80
25-29	77	79	80	78	82	78
30-34	71	74	75	75	78	79
35-39	73	77	75	67	73	69
40-44	66	76	77	75	79	72
45-49	68	75	67	68	68	68
50-54	66	78	81	65	78	72
55-59	55	67	62	64	71	71
60-64	64	75	67	64	78	67
65-69	66	65	65	74	74	84
70-74	73	84	82	67	80	79
75+	61	63	69	71	82	82
Total	81	82	82	83	83	81

Source: Caldwell and Igun, 1971:296-297.

simple question on age that are implied by a comparison with each of the three more complex age-estimation methods. The three estimates of the overall proportion reporting their age correctly were virtually the same: about 82 percent for each sex. However, by examining the proportions estimated to be "correct" in each age group we find important differences among the three methods. For females, the historical calendar approach seems to underestimate the number of errors for women under age 25 and to exaggerate the number of errors over age 50 relative to the cohort approaches. For males, the historical calendar approach appears to overstate the errors at ages 30-54 and at 70 and over and to slightly underestimate the errors at other ages.

Table A-2 summarizes the pattern of misreporting implied by each of the three age-estimation methods. It is clear from this table that the historical approach leads to very different conclusions regarding the pattern of misreporting than do the cohort approaches. The calendar approach suggests that all persons over the age of 10 tend to understate their age. Caldwell and Igun conclude that this provides "corroboration for the suspicion that the historical calendar method might tend to overstate" the ages of respondents (1971:295).

Other evidence that the use of historical calendars might bias reported ages upward comes from data presented by Scott and Sabagh. In the second round of the Multi-Purpose Survey of Morocco, males aged 15-20 were asked how many times they had observed Ramadan. Since Ramadan is generally first celebrated at the time a male reaches puberty, comparing the number of times a man has celebrated Ramadan with other estimates of his age should provide evidence on the accuracy of the estimates. What is significant for our purposes is that by using the ages estimated by reference to the events calendar, the mean age at first Ramadan comes to about 15.7 years, whereas using age estimates based on appearance and responses, the mean age was 14.2 years in the first round and 14.7 in the second round (1970:102). It therefore appears that for males aged 15-20, use of historical calendars tended to increase the reported age.

In Gibril's analysis of the tape recordings from Gambia, he tried to evaluate the interviewer's effect on the reported age. By comparing the age reported by the respondent with the age actually recorded by the enumerator he concluded that the interviewers in Gambia, using historical calendars, tended to overstate ages (1979:69).

TABLE A-2 Net Percentage of Respondents Overstating Their Age, Based on Three Age-Estimation Techniques: Nigeria

Reported Age	Males			Females		
	Historical Calendar	Modal Age of Cohorts	"Best" Cohort Estimate	Historical Calendar	Modal Age of Cohorts	"Best" Cohort Estimate
0-4	2	3[a]	6[a]	2	3	4
5-9	1	2	-1	0	0	1
10-14	-3	0	0	-2	-1	1
15-19	-3	0	3	0	5	3
20-24	-5	0	1	-2	-1	0
25-29	-7	1	2	-6	8	-4
30-34	-11	0	-5	-9	2	21
35-39	-9	-3	1	-7	-1	5
40-44	-16	0	1	-7	7	6
45-49	-8	11	3	-10	8	2
50-54	-14	-8	-7	-9	-2	-8
55-59	-21	-1	0	-16	-3	-13
60-64	-4	-5	-3	-3	-6	5
65-69	-20	5	-9	-14	6	-4
70-74	-17	-4	-6	-9	4	5
75+	-17	-11	-11	-1	8	8
Total	-5	0	0	-3	1	3

Note: The percentages shown represent the percentage reported in a higher five-year age group minus the percentage reported in a lower five-year age group.

[a] These two figures have been adjusted from the original data, which indicated that a percentage of those aged 0-4 had been reported in a lower five-year age group--which cannot be correct.

Source: Based on Caldwell and Igun, 1971:296-297.

In three of the cases mentioned above, there appears to be a tendency for age to be overstated when it is estimated from historical calendars. However, Scott and Sabagh report some preliminary findings from a report by W. A. Belson on a study of memory of public events which suggest that understatement might be the effect in some populations: "Except in the case of recent events, the general tendency was toward post-dating. Errors were often very substantial and were larger among respondents in the less skilled occupational groups" (1970:106). A bias of this sort would lead to an understatement of age if the age at the time of the event were reported accurately.

There is one case in which a clear bias toward understatement of age has been linked to the use of historical calendars. In a study of a village in rural Haiti, Chen and Murray (1976) were able to use a combination of baptismal records and sibling and peer matching to derive reliable age estimates for 90 percent of the population. Baptismal records were located for about 68 percent of the population, about 15 percent were siblings of people with baptismal records, and the remainder were matched with childhood friends who were slightly older or younger. Murray compared these ages with the ages determined for adults using a calendar of the presidents of Haiti, since it is widely believed that everyone in Haiti knows who was president at the time of his birth. He found first of all that 31 percent of the adult respondents claimed they did not know who was president at the time of their birth. Most of those who said they did not know were over age 50. Of the remaining 285 adult respondents, 48 percent named the wrong president. Murray concludes that this belies the "stereotype that aging by Presidents is the ancient, traditional aging technique of the Haitian peasant" (1979). In examining the errors that were made, he discovered that in more than 90 percent of these cases the person named the president subsequent to the correct one. This means that in more than 40 percent of the cases in which an adult claimed to know who was president at the time of his or her birth the resulting age would have been lower than the correct age.

In every one of these cases, the evidence suggests that Caldwell and Igun were correct when they concluded: "The possibility should not be ignored that the historical method actually introduces non-random errors" (1971:301-302).

Glossary

AGE HEAPING A tendency for enumerators or respondents to report certain ages instead of others; also called age preference or digit preference. Preference for ages ending in 0 or 5 is widespread.

AGE PATTERN OF FERTILITY The relative distribution of a set of age-specific fertility rates. It expresses the relative contribution of each age group to total fertility.

AGE RATIO The ratio of the population in a given age group to the average of the populations in the two neighboring age groups, times 100.

AGE-SPECIFIC FERTILITY RATE The number of births occurring during a specified period to women of a specified age or age group, divided by the number of person-years-lived during that period by women of that age or age group. When an age-specific fertility rate is calculated for a calendar year, the number of births to women of the specified age is usually divided by the midyear population of women of that age.

AGE-SPECIFIC MORTALITY RATE The number of deaths occurring during a specified period to persons (usually specified by sex) of a specified age or age group, divided by the number of person-years-lived during that period by the persons of that age or age group. When an age-specific mortality rate is calculated for a calendar year, the number of deaths to persons of the specified age is usually divided by the midyear population of persons of that age. Age-specific mortality rates are generally denoted by ${}_nM_x$, the annual death rate to persons aged x to x + n.

AGE STANDARDIZATION A procedure of adjustment of crude rates (birth, death, or other rates) designed to reduce the effect of differences in age structure when comparing rates for different populations.

BIRTH HISTORY A report of the number and dates of all live births experienced by a particular woman; see also pregnancy history. The sex of each child, the survival of each child to the date of the interview, and, where pertinent, the date of death are also generally recorded.

BIRTH ORDER The ordinal number of a given live birth in relation to all previous live births of the same woman (e.g., 5 is the birth order of the fifth live birth occurring to the same woman).

BIRTH RATE See crude birth rate.

CHANDRASEKARAN-DEMING TECHNIQUE A procedure to estimate the coverage of two independent systems collecting information about demographic or other events, based on the assumption that the probability of an event being recorded by one system is the same whether or not the event is recorded by the other system. The events from both systems are matched to establish M, the number of events recorded by both systems; U_1, the number recorded only by system 1; and U_2, the number recorded only by system 2. The Chandrasekaran-Deming formula then estimates total events, N, as

$$\hat{N} = M + U_1 + U_2 + \frac{U_1 U_2}{M}.$$

CHILDBEARING AGES The span within which women are capable of bearing children, generally taken to be from age 15 to age 49 or, sometimes, to age 44.

CHILDREN EVER BORN(E) The number of children ever borne alive by a particular woman; synonymous with parity. In demographic usage, stillbirths are specifically excluded.

COHORT A group of individuals who experienced the same class of events in the same period. Thus an age cohort is a group of people born during a particular period, and a marriage cohort is a group of people who married during a particular period. The effects of a given set of mortality or fertility rates are often illustrated by applying them to hypothetical cohorts.

COHORT FERTILITY The fertility experienced over time by a group of women or men who form a birth or a marriage cohort. The analysis of cohort fertility is contrasted with that of period fertility.

CRUDE BIRTH RATE The number of births in a population during a specified period divided by the number of person-years-lived by the population during the same period. It is frequently expressed as births per 1,000 population. The crude birth rate for a single year is usually calculated as the number of births during the year divided by the midyear population.

CRUDE DEATH RATE The number of deaths in a population during a specified period divided by the number of person-years-lived by the population during the same period. It is frequently expressed as deaths per 1,000 population. The crude death rate for a single year is usually calculated as the number of deaths during the year divided by the midyear population.

CUMULATED FERTILITY An estimate of the average number of children ever borne by women of some age x, obtained by cumulating age-specific fertility rates up to age x; also often calculated for age groups.

DEATH RATE See crude death rate.

DE FACTO POPULATION A population enumerated on the basis of those present at a particular time, including temporary visitors and excluding residents temporarily absent. See de jure population.

DE JURE POPULATION A population enumerated on the basis of normal residence, excluding temporary visitors and including residents temporarily absent. See de facto population.

DIGITAL PREFERENCE See age heaping.

EXPECTATION OF LIFE AT BIRTH The average number of years that a member of a cohort of births would be expected to live if the cohort were subject to the mortality conditions expressed by a particular set of age-specific mortality rates. Denoted by the symbol e(o) in life table notation.

FERTILITY HISTORY Either a birth history or a pregnancy history.

FORWARD SURVIVAL A procedure for estimating the age distribution at some later date by projecting forward an observed age distribution. The procedure uses survival ratios, often obtained from model life tables. The procedure is basically a form of population projection without the introduction of new entrants (births) to the population.

GENERAL FERTILITY RATE The ratio of the number of live births in a period to the number of person-years-lived by women of childbearing ages during the period. The general fertility rate for a year is usually calculated as the number of births divided by the number of women of childbearing ages at midyear.

GROSS REPRODUCTION RATE The average number of female children a woman would have if she survived to the end of her childbearing years and if, throughout, she were subject to a given set of age-specific fertility rates and a given sex ratio at birth. This number provides a measure of replacement fertility in the absence of mortality.

GROWTH RATE The increase or decrease of a population in a period divided by the number of person-years-lived by the number of person-years-lived by the population during the same period. The increase in a population is the result of a surplus (or deficit) of births over deaths and a surplus (or deficit) of immigrants over emigrants. (The annual increase is often expressed as a fraction of the total population at the beginning of the year, but this convention has the inconvenient characteristic of not being readily defined for a five-year interval and of being unequal to the difference between the birth rate and the death rate even in the absence of migration.) See also rate of natural increase.

INFANT MORTALITY RATE The number of deaths of children under 1 year of age occurring in the same year; also used in a more rigorous sense to mean the number of deaths that would occur under 1 year of age in a life table with a radix of 1,000, in which sense it is denoted by the symbol ${}_1q_0$.

LIFE TABLE A listing of the number of survivors at different ages (up to the highest age attained) in a hypothetical cohort subject from birth to a particular set of age-specific mortality rates. The rates are usually those observed in a given population during a particular period of time. The survivors of the radix to age x are generally denoted by l(x). The tabulations commonly accompanying a life table include other features of the cohort's experience: its expectation of life at each age x, denoted by e(x); the probability of surviving from each age x to age x + n, denoted by ${}_nq_x$; the person-years-lived by the hypothetical cohort as it ages from age x to age x + n, denoted by ${}_nL_x$ (also equivalent to the population aged x, x + n in a stationary population experiencing a number of births each year equal to the radix of the life table); and the person-years-lived by the hypothetical cohort from age x onward, denoted by T(x).

LOGIT The logit of a proportion p is 1/2 ln[p/(1 - p)]. As a linearizing transformation, the logit has been proposed as the basis of a model life table system in which the logit of a probability of dying by age x (${}_xq_0$) is related linearly to the logit of a standard probability of dying by age x (${}_xq_0^s$) so that

$$\text{logit } ({}_xq_0) = \alpha + \beta \, [\text{logit } ({}_xq_0^s)],$$

where α is a measure of mortality level relative to the standard and β is a parameter that alters the shape of the standard mortality function.

MARITAL FERTILITY Any measure of fertility in which the births (in the numerator) are births to married women and in which the number of person-years-lived (in the denominator) also pertains to married women. In some instances, the designation "married" includes persons in consensual unions.

MEDIAN The value associated with the central member of a set that is ordered by size or some other characteristic expressed in numbers.

MEAN AGE OF CHILDBEARING The average age at which a mortality-free cohort of women bear their children according to a set of age-specific fertility rates.

MEAN AGE OF CHILDBEARING IN THE POPULATION The average age of the mothers of the children born in a population during a year. This measure incorporates the effects of both mortality and the age distribution.

MODEL LIFE TABLE An expression of typical mortality experience derived from a group of observed life tables.

MOVING AVERAGES The successive averaging of two or more adjacent values of a series in order to remove sharp fluctuations.

MYERS INDEX An index of digit preference that essentially sums in turn the population ending in each digit over some age range, often 10-89, expressing the total as a percentage of the total population, and which avoids the bias introduced by the fact that the population is not evenly distributed among all ages by repeating the calculations 10 times, once for each starting digit, and averaging the results. The difference between the average percentage for each digit and the expected value of 10 percent provides a measure of the preference for or avoidance of the digit over the age range considered.

NATURAL FERTILITY The age pattern of marital fertility observed in non-contraceptive populations where reproductive behavior is not affected by the number of children already born.

NET MIGRATION The difference between gross immigration and gross emigration.

NET REPRODUCTION RATE The average number of female children born per woman in a cohort subject to a given set of age-specific fertility rates, a given set of age-specific mortality rates, and a given sex ratio at birth. This rate measures replacement fertility under given conditions of fertility and mortality: it is the ratio of daughters to mothers assuming continuation of the specified conditions of fertility and mortality.

OWN-CHILDREN METHOD A refinement of the reverse-survival procedure for fertility estimation, whereby estimates of age-specific fertility rates for the recent past are obtained by relating mothers to their own children, using information on relationship and other characteristics available from a census or survey.

PARITY See children ever born.

PARTIAL BIRTH RATE The proportion of the population that enters (that is, is "born" into) a given age category in a year. The age categories used are normally open-ended, thus the partial birth rate x+ designates the proportion of the population becoming x years and older.

PARTIAL DEATH RATE The proportion of the population that leaves (that is, "dies" out of) a given age category in a year. See partial birth rate.

PERIOD FERTILITY The fertility experienced during a particular period of time by women from all relevant birth or marriage cohorts; see also cohort fertility.

P/F RATIO METHOD A consistency check for survey information on fertility. Information on recent fertility is cumulated to obtain measures that are equivalent to average parities. Lifetime fertility in the form of reported average parities by age group (P) can then be compared for consistency with the parity-equivalents (F) by calculating the ratio P/F for successive age groups. If certain assumptions about error patterns are met, an improved estimate of fertility can sometimes be obtained by correcting the age pattern of current fertility to agree with the level of lifetime fertility reported by younger women.

PREGNANCY HISTORY A report of the number and the dates of occurrence of all the pregnancies experienced by a particular woman. The outcome of the pregnancy--live birth, stillbirth, fetal death--is also recorded.

RADIX The hypothetical birth cohort of a life table. Common values are 1, 1,000, and 100,000.

RATE OF NATURAL INCREASE The difference between the births and deaths occurring during a given period divided by the number of person-years-lived by the population during the same period. This rate, which specifically excludes changes resulting from migration, is the difference between the crude birth rate and the crude death rate.

RETROSPECTIVE SURVEY A survey that obtains information about demographic events that occurred in a given past period, generally terminating at the time of the survey.

REVERSE PROJECTION See reverse survival.

REVERSE SURVIVAL A technique to estimate an earlier population from an observed population, allowing for those members of the population who would have died according to observed or assumed mortality conditions. It is used as a method of estimating fertility by calculating from the observed number of survivors of a given age x the expected number of births that occurred x years earlier. (In situations for which both fertility and mortality are known or can be reliably estimated, reverse survival can be used to estimate migration.)

ROBUSTNESS A characteristic of estimates that are not greatly affected by deviations from the assumptions on which the estimation procedure is based.

SEX RATIO AT BIRTH The number of male births for each female birth, or male births per 100 female births.

SINGULATE MEAN AGE AT MARRIAGE (SMAM) A measure of the mean age at first marriage, derived from a set of proportions of people single at different ages or in different age groups, usually calculated separately for males and females.

STABLE POPULATION A population exposed for a long time to constant fertility and mortality rates, and closed to migration, establishes a fixed age distribution and constant growth rate characteristic of the vital rates. Such a population, with a constant age structure and constant rate of growth, is called a stable population.

STATIONARY POPULATION A stable population that has a zero growth rate, with constant numbers of births and deaths per year. Its age structure is determined by the mortality rates and is equivalent to the person-years-lived ($_nL_x$) column of a conventional life table.

SURVIVAL RATIO The probability of surviving between one age and another; often computed for age groups, in which case the ratios correspond to those of the person-years-lived function, $_nL_x$, of a life table. Also called survivorship probabilities.

SURVIVORSHIP PROBABILITIES See survival ratio.

SYNTHETIC PARITY The average parity calculated for a hypothetical cohort exposed indefinitely to a set of period age-specific fertility rates.

TOTAL FERTILITY RATE (TFR) The average number of children that would be born per woman if all women lived to the end of their childbearing years and bore children according to a given set of age-specific fertility rates; also referred to as total fertility. It is frequently used to compute the consequence of childbearing at the rates currently observed.

UNITED NATIONS AGE-SEX ACCURACY INDEX An index of age reporting accuracy that is based on deviations from the expected regularity of population size and sex ratio, age group by age group. The index is calculated as the sum of (1) the mean absolute deviation from 100 of the age ratios for males, (2) the mean absolute deviation from 100 of the age ratios for females, and (3) three times the mean of the absolute difference in reported sex ratios from one age group to the next. The United Nations defines age-sex data as "accurate," "inaccurate," or "highly inaccurate" depending on whether the index is less than 20, 20 to 40, or greater than 40.

WHIPPLE'S INDEX A measure of the quality of age reporting based on the extent of preference for a particular target digit or digits. The index essentially compares the reported population at ages ending in the target digit or digits with the population expected on the assumption that population is a linear function of age. For a particular age range, often 23 to 62, the population with ages ending in the target digits is divided by one-tenth of the total population, the result then being multiplied by 100 and divided by the number of different target digits. A value of 100 indicates no preference for those digits, whereas values over 100 indicate positive preference for them.

References

Agarwala, S. (1960) A method for correcting reported ages and marriage durations. Indian Population Bulletin 1(1):129-164.

Akers, D. S., and E. A. Larmon (1967) Indians and smudges on the census schedule. In Proceedings of the Social Statistics Section, American Statistical Association, 1967, pp. 369-373. Washington, D.C.: American Statistical Association.

Andoh, E. K. (1980) Response Variability in African Demographic Survey Data: A Case Study of a Nigerian Village. African Demography Program Working Paper No. 1, Population Studies Center, University of Pennsylvania.

Beaujot, R. P. (1977) Direct Observation as a Mode of Census Evaluation: The Moroccan Census of 1971. Unpublished paper, University of Western Ontario.

Berggren, G., N. Murthy, and S. J. Williams (1974) Rural Haitian women: An analysis of fertility rates. Social Biology 21:332-339.

Berggren, G., W. Berggren, and D. Ewbank (1979) Migration and the Instability of Households in the Artibonite Valley of Haiti. Paper presented at the annual meeting of the Population Association of America, Atlanta, Ga.

Blacker, J. G. C. (1965) Use of sample surveys to obtain data on age structure of the population when respondents in a regular census enumeration cannot give accurate data: Some Kenya experiments. In World Population Conference, Vol. 3, pp. 126-130. New York: United Nations.

Brass, W. I. (1975) Methods for Estimating Fertility and Mortality from Limited and Defective Data. Chapel Hill, N.C.: The Carolina Population Center.

Brass, W. I., A. J. Coale, P. Demeny, D. F. Heisel, F. Lorimer, A. Romaniuk, and E. van de Walle (1968) The Demography of Tropical Africa. Princeton, N. J.: Princeton University Press.

Caldwell, J. C. (1966) Study of age misstatement among young children in Ghana. Demography (3):477-490.

Caldwell, J. C., and A. A. Igun (1971) An experiment with census-type age enumeration in Nigeria. Population Studies 25(2):287-302.

Chamratrithirong, A., N. Debavalya, and J. Knodel (1978) Age Reporting in Thailand: Age at Last Birthday versus Age at Next Birthday. Institute of Population Studies Paper No. 25. Bangkok: Chulalongkorn University.

Chander, R. (1973) An Interim Report on the Post Enumeration Survey. Kuala Lumpur: Malaysian Census Office.

Chari, R. B. (1977) Census of India: Age Tables. Paper 3, Series 1. New Delhi: Office of the Registrar General.

Chen, H., and G. F. Murray (1976) Truths and untruths in village Haiti: An experiment in third-world survey research. In J. Marshall and S. Polgar, eds., Culture, Natality, and Family Planning, pp. 241-262. Chapel Hill, N.C.: University of North Carolina.

Cho, L.-J. (1971) Korea: Estimating current fertility from the 1966 census. Studies in Family Planning 2(3):74-78.

Coale, A. J., and P. Demeny (1966) Regional Model Life Tables and Stable Populations. Princeton, N.J.: Princeton University Press.

Coale, A. J., and N. W. Rives (1973) Statistical reconstruction of the black population of the United States 1880-1970: Estimates of true numbers by age and sex, birth rates, and total fertility. Population Index 39(1):3-36.

Coale, A. J., and F. F. Stephan (1962) The case of Indians and the teen-age widows. Journal of the American Statistical Association 57(298):338-347.

Coale, A. J., and M. Zelnick (1963) New Estimates of Fertility and Population in the United States.

Princeton, N.J.: Princeton University Press.

Coale, A. J., L.-J. Cho, and N. Goldman (1980) *Estimation of Recent Trends in Fertility and Mortality in the Republic of Korea*. Report No. 1, Committee on Population and Demography, Assembly of Behavioral and Social Sciences, National Research Council. Washington, D.C.: National Academy Press.

Colombia, National Department of Statistics (1977) *Encuesta Nacional de Fecundidad Colombia 1976, Resultados Generales*. Bogota: National Department of Statistics.

Demeny, P., and F. Shorter (1968) *Estimating Turkish Mortality, Fertility and Age Structure*. Istanbul: Istanbul University.

Dominican Republic, Consejo Nacional de Poblacion y Familia (1976) *The Dominican Republic Fertility Survey: An Assessment of Procedures and Problems*. Santo Domingo: Secretario de Estado de Salud Publica y Asistencia Social.

Ewbank, D. C. (1980) The Search for a Set of Consistent Estimates of Mortality from Survey Data: The Example of Bangladesh. Unpublished paper, Center for Population Studies, Harvard University.

Ewbank, D. C., and H. R. Hogan (no date) Distribution by age and sex. In R. Henin, ed., *The Demography of Tanzania*, pp. 27-38. Dar es Salaam: Bureau of Statistics and the Bureau of Resource Assessment Land Use Planning.

Fiji Bureau of Statistics (1976) *Fiji Fertility Survey, 1974 Principal Report*. Suva: Fiji Government Printing Office.

Gaisie, S. K. (1976) *Estimating Ghanaian Fertility, Mortality and Age Structure*. University of Ghana Population Studies No. 5. Legon, Ghana: University of Ghana.

Ghana, Census Office (1962) *Advanced Report of 1960 Population Census of Ghana, Vols. III and IV*. Accra: Ghana Census Office.

Ghana, Census Office (1964) *1960 Population Census of Ghana, Vol. V: General Report*. Accra: Ghana Census Office.

Ghana, Census Office (1975) *1970 Population Census of Ghana, Vol. III: Demographic Characteristics of Local Authorities, Regions and Total Country*. Accra: Ghana Census Office.

Gibril, M. A. (1975) Some Reporting Errors in the 1973 Gambian Census. M.Sc. thesis, University of London.

Gibril, M. A. (1979) Evaluating Census Response Errors: A Case Study for the Gambia. Paris: Organisation for Economic Co-Operation and Development, Development Centre.

Gil, B., K. T. de Graft-Johnson, and E. A. Colecraft (1971) The Post-Enumeration Survey, 1960 Population Census of Ghana. Accra: Ghana Census Office.

Goldman, N., A. J. Coale, and M. Weinstein (1979) The Quality of Data in the Nepal Fertility Survey. WFS Scientific Report No. 6. London: World Fertility Survey.

Gray, P., and F. A. Gee (1972) A Quality Check on the 1966 Ten Percent Sample Census of England and Wales. London: Her Majesty's Stationery Office, Office of Population Censuses and Surveys.

Great Britain (1970) The Registrar General's Statistical Review of England and Wales for the Year 1966, Part III, Commentary. London: Her Majesty's Stationery Office.

Hill, K., H. Zlotnik, and J. Durch (1980) Simple Procedures for Reducing the Effects of Age Errors on Indirect Demographic Estimation Techniques. Paper presented at the annual meeting of the Population Association of America, Denver, Colo.

Hill, K., H. Zlotnik, and T. J. Trussell (1981) Demographic Estimation: A Manual on Indirect Techniques. Committee on Population and Demography, Assembly of Behavioral and Social Sciences, National Research Council. Washington, D.C.: National Academy Press.

Howell, N. (1979) Demography of the Dobe !Kung. New York: Academic Press.

Indonesia Central Bureau of Statistics (1978) Indonesia Fertility Survey 1976, Principal Report, Vol. I, App. IV. Jakarta, Indonesia: Central Bureau of Statistics.

Kamps, J. E. (1976) La Declaracion de la Edad en los Censos de Poblacion de la America Latina. CELADE Series C, No. 1004. Santiago, Chile: Centro Latinoamericano de Demografia.

Karim, M. S., and A. Iqbal (1975) Age reporting in Pakistan and its implications for fertility analysis. The Pakistan Development Review XIV(1):100-119.

Kenya, Central Bureau of Statistics (1976) Demographic Characteristics: Comparison of Ages Reported During Various Surveys. Demographic Working Paper No. 4. Nairobi: Kenya Central Bureau of Statistics.

Keyfitz, N. (1966) Some characteristic features of census age distributions in illiterate populations. American Journal of Sociology LXXI(5):549-557.

Krotki, K. J. (1969) The Treatment of Age Errors in Population Data in the U.N. Proposed Application of Stable Population Methods. Paper presented at the annual meeting of the Population Association of America, Atlantic City, N.J.

Krotki, K. J., and R. Beaujot (1975) La population marocaine: reconstitution de l'evolution de 1950 a 1971. Population 30(2): 335-367.

MacDonald, A. L., P. M. Simpson, and A. M. Whitfield (1978) An Assessment of the Reliability of the Indonesia Fertility Survey Data. WFS Scientific Report No. 3. London, England: World Fertility Survey.

Marks, E. S. (1978) The role of dual estimation in census evaluation. In K. J. Krotki, ed., Developments in Dual System Estimation of Population Size and Growth, pp. 156-188. Edmonton: University of Alberta.

Marks, E. S., and J. C. Rumford (1978) The 1974 post-enumeration survey of Liberia--A new approach. In K. J. Krotki, ed., Developments in Dual System Estimation of Population Size and Growth, pp. 189-204. Edmonton: University of Alberta.

Marks, E. S. and J. Waksberg (1966) Evaluation of coverage in the 1960 census of population through case-by-case checking. In Proceedings of the Social Statistics Section, 1966, pp. 62-70. Washington, D.C.: American Statistical Association.

Mexico, Director General of Statistics (1978) Encuesta Mexicana de Fecundidad, Informe Metodologico. Mexico City: Director General of Statistics.

Mukherjee, S. B. (1976) The Age Distribution of the Indian Population. Honolulu: East-West Center.

Murray, G. F. (1979) Personal communication to the author, May 30.

Myers, R. (1966) Validity of centenarian data in the 1960 census. Demography 3(2):470-476.

National Research Council (1972) America's Uncounted People. Report by Advisory Committee on Problems of Census Enumeration, Division of Behavioral Science. Washington, D.C.: National Academy of Sciences.

Nepal Health Ministry (1977) Nepal Fertility Survey, 1976: First Report. Katmandu: Nepal Health Ministry.

Ntozi, J. P. M. (1978) The Demeny-Shorter and three-census methods for correcting age data. *Demography* 15(4):509-522.

Park, J. S. (1966) *An Evaluation Study for the Accuracy of the 1960 Population and Housing Census of Korea*. Seoul: Korean Bureau of Statistics.

Picouet, M. (1969) Etude de la structure par age de la population Tunisienne a partir de l'examen des pyramides d'ages. *Revue Tunisienne de Sciences Sociales* 6(17-18):177-213.

Pison, G. (1978) *Etudes Demographique dans la Region du Sine-Saloum (Senegal)*. Dakar: Office de la Recherche Scientifique et Technique Outre-Mer.

Pison, G. (1979) Age declare et age reel: Une mesure des erreurs sur l'age en l'absence d'etat civil. *Population* 3:637-648.

Pison, G. (1980) Calculer l'age sans le demander: Methode d'estimation de l'age et structure par age des Peuls Bande (Senegal oriental). *Population* 4-5:861-892.

Quandt, A. S. (1973) The Social Production of Census Data: Interviews in the 1971 Moroccan Census. Unpublished Ph.D. dissertation, University of California, Los Angeles.

Rashad, H. M. (1978) The Estimation of Adult Mortality from Defective Registration Data. Unpublished Ph.D. dissertation, University of London.

Raghavachari, S., and K. Natarajan (1974) *Smoothed Age Data of the 1971 Census and Life Tables, 1961-1971*. Census of India: Age and Life Tables, Paper 2, Series 1: Miscellaneous Studies. New Delhi: Office of the Registrar General.

Rosenwaike, I. (1979) A new evaluation of United States census data on the extreme aged. *Demography* 16(2):279-288.

Santow, G. (1977) *Microsimulation Test of the Effect of Age Misstatement on Estimates of Childhood Mortality*. Working Paper No. 8. Voorburg, Netherlands: Netherlands Interuniversity Demographic Institute.

Saw, Swee-Hock (1967) Errors in Chinese age statistics. *Demography* 4(2):859-875.

Scott, C., and G. Sabagh (1970) The historical calendar as a method of estimating age: The experience of the Moroccan Multi-Purpose Sample Survey of 1961-63. *Population Studies* 24(1):93-109.

Scott, C., and S. Singh (1980) Problems of Data Collection in the World Fertility Survey. Paper presented at the World Fertility Conference, London, July.

Seltzer, W. (1973) *Demographic Data Collection*. An occasional paper. New York: The Population Council.

Seng, Y. P. (1959) Errors in age reporting in statistically underdeveloped countries. *Population Studies* 13(2):164-182.

Siegel, J. S., and M. Zelnick (1966) An evaluation of coverage in the 1960 census of population by techniques of demographic analysis and by composite methods. In *Proceedings of the Social Statistics Section, 1966*, pp. 71-85. Washington, D.C.: American Statistical Association.

Sri Lanka, Department of Census and Statistics (1978) *World Fertility Survey, Sri Lanka 1975, First Report*. Colombo: Department of Census and Statistics.

Steinberg, J. (1966) Discussion. In *Proceedings of the Social Statistics Section, 1966*, pp. 86-88. Washington, D.C.: American Statistical Association.

Ueda, K. (1976) *Accuracy of Census Sex-Age Data in Asia and the Pacific Countries*. S.P.S. 76-1, No. 103. Tokyo: Institute of Developing Economies.

U.N. Department of Economic and Social Affairs (1955) *Manual II: Methods of Appraisal of Quality of Basic Data for Population Estimates*. Population Studies No. 23. New York: United Nations.

U.N. Department of Economic and Social Affairs (1967) *Manual IV: Methods of Estimating Basic Demographic Measures from Incomplete Data*. Population Studies No. 42. New York: United Nations.

United Republic of Tanzania, Bureau of Statistics (1971) *1967 Population Census, Vol. 5: Census Methodology*. Dar es Salaam: Tanzanian Government Printing Office.

U.S. Bureau of the Census (1953) *Infant Enumeration Study: 1950*. Procedural Studies of the 1950 Censuses, No. 1. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office.

U.S. Bureau of the Census (1960) *The Post-Enumeration Survey: 1950*. Technical Paper No. 4. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office.

U.S. Bureau of the Census (1973) *The Medicare Record Check: An Evaluation of the Coverage of Persons 65 Years of Age and Over in the 1970 Census*. Evaluation and Research Program, PHC(E)-7. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office.

U.S. Bureau of the Census (1974) *Accuracy of Data on Population Characteristics as Measured by*

Reinterviews. Evaluation and Research Program of the U.S. Censuses of Population and Housing, Series ER60, No. 4. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office.

U.S. Bureau of the Census (1975a) Accuracy of Data on Population Characteristics as Measured by CPS-Census Match. Evaluation and Research Program of the U.S. Censuses of Population and Housing 1960, Series ER60, No. 5. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office.

U.S. Bureau of the Census (1975b) Accuracy of Data for Selected Population Characteristics as Measured by the 1970 CPS-Census Match. Evaluation of Research Program, PHC(E)-11. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office.

U.S. Public Health Service (1968) Comparability of Age on the Death Certificate and Matching Census Record, United States, May-August 1960. National Center for Health Statistics, Series 2, No. 29. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office.

van de Walle, E. (1968) Note on the effect of age misreporting. In Brass et al., The Demography of Tropical Africa, Appendix B to Chapter 3. Princeton, N.J.: Princeton University Press.

Ware, H. (1977) Language Problems in Demographic Field Work in Africa: The Case of the Cameroon Fertility Survey. WFS Scientific Report No. 2, October. London: World Fertility Survey.

COMMITTEE ON
POPULATION AND DEMOGRAPHY Report No. 5

Estimation of Recent Trends in Fertility and Mortality in Bangladesh

Panel on Bangladesh
Committee on Population and Demography
Assembly of Behavioral and Social Sciences
National Research Council

NATIONAL ACADEMY PRESS
Washington, D.C. 1981

NOTICE: The project that is the subject of this report was approved by the Governing Board of the National Research Council, whose members are drawn from the councils of the National Academy of Sciences, the National Academy of Engineering, and the Institute of Medicine. The members of the Committee responsible for the report were chosen for their special competences and with regard for appropriate balance.

This report has been reviewed by a group other than the authors according to procedures approved by a Report Review Committee consisting of members of the National Academy of Sciences, the National Academy of Engineering, and the Institute of Medicine.

The National Research Council was established by the National Academy of Sciences in 1916 to associate the broad community of science and technology with the Academy's purposes of furthering knowledge and of advising the federal government. The Council operates in accordance with general policies determined by the Academy under the authority of its congressional charter of 1863, which establishes the Academy as a private, nonprofit, self-governing membership corporation. The Council has become the principal operating agency of both the National Academy of Sciences and the National Academy of Engineering in the conduct of their services to the government, the public, and the scientific and engineering communities. It is administered jointly by both Academies and the Institute of Medicine. The National Academy of Engineering and the Institute of Medicine were established in 1964 and 1970, respectively, under the charter of the National Academy of Sciences.

Library of Congress Cataloging in Publication Data

Main entry under title:

Estimation of recent trends in fertilty and mortality in Bangladesh.

(Report / Committee on Population and Demography ; no. 5)
1. Bangladesh--Population. 2. Fertility, Human --Bangladesh. 3. Mortality--Bangladesh.
I. National Research Council (U.S.). Committee on Population and Demography. Panel on Bangladesh.
II. Title. III. Series: Report (National Research Council (U.S.). Committee on Population and Demography) ; no. 5.
HB3640.6.A3E85 304.6'09549'2 81-3937
ISBN 0-309-03139-7 AACR2

Available from

NATIONAL ACADEMY PRESS
2101 Constitution Avenue, N.W.
Washington, D.C. 20418

Printed in the United States of America

COMMITTEE ON POPULATION AND DEMOGRAPHY

ANSLEY J. COALE (*Chairman*), Office of Population Research, Princeton University
WILLIAM BRASS, Centre for Population Studies, London School of Hygiene and Tropical Medicine
LEE-JAY CHO, East-West Population Institute, East-West Center, Honolulu
RONALD FREEDMAN, Population Studies Center, University of Michigan
NATHAN KEYFITZ, Department of Sociology, Harvard University
LESLIE KISH, Institute for Social Research, University of Michigan
W. PARKER MAULDIN, Population Division, The Rockefeller Foundation, New York
JANE MENKEN, Office of Population Research, Princeton University
SAMUEL PRESTON, Population Studies Center, University of Pennsylvania
WILLIAM SELTZER, Statistical Office, United Nations
CONRAD TAEUBER, Kennedy Institute, Center for Population Research, Georgetown University
ETIENNE VAN DE WALLE, Population Studies Center, University of Pennsylvania

ROBERT J. LAPHAM, *Study Director*

NOTE: Members of the Committee and its panels and working groups participated in this project in their individual capacities; the listing of their organizational affiliation is for identification purposes only, and the views and designations used in this report are not necessarily those of the organizations mentioned.

PANEL ON BANGLADESH

WILLIAM BRASS (*Chairman*), Centre for Population Studies, London School of Hygiene and Tropical Medicine
MAHBUBUDDIN AHMAD, Cairo Demographic Centre, Cairo
JOHN BLACKER, Centre for Population Studies, London School of Hygiene and Tropical Medicine
ALAUDDIN CHOWDHURY, International Center for Diarrhoeal Diseases Research, Dacca
AMINUR R. KHAN, Population Planning Commission, Dacca
MASIHUR R. KHAN, Bangladesh Institute for Development Studies, Dacca
SIDDIQUER RAHMAN, Population Census Wing, Statistics Division, Ministry of Planning, Dacca

KENNETH HILL, Senior Research Associate, Committee on Population and Demography

Contents

LIST OF TABLES ix

LIST OF FIGURES xii

PREFACE xiii

SUMMARY 1

1 INTRODUCTION 5

Bangladesh and Its People 6
Demographic Data Sources 8
Population Characteristics as Recorded by Censuses 11
Summary 31

2 FERTILITY 32

The Population Growth Estimation (PGE) Experiment 32
The National Impact Survey (NIS) 36
The Bangladesh Retrospective Survey of Fertility and Mortality (BRSFM) 38

The Bangladesh Fertility Survey (BFS) 43
The Cholera Research Laboratory (CRL) 49
Summary 50

3 MARITAL STATUS 53

4 MORTALITY 57

The Population Growth Estimation (PGE) Experiment 58
The Bangladesh Retrospective Survey of Fertility and Mortality (BRSFM) 71
The Bangladesh Fertility Survey (BFS) 88
The Cholera Research Laboratory (CRL) 91
Summary 92

5 REGIONAL VARIATION IN FERTILITY AND MORTALITY 95

6 POPULATION GROWTH IN BANGLADESH 98

GLOSSARY 105

REFERENCES 113

List of Tables

1. Data Sources by Type of Evidence 12
2. Enumerated Population by Sex and Religion in 1951, 1961, and 1974, and Intercensal Growth Rates 14
3. Distribution of the Population by Age and Sex, from Major Sources, 1951-75 17
4. Stable Population Estimates of the Male and Female Birth Rates of the Muslim Population in 1951, 1961, and 1974 20
5. Population Birth Rates and Sex Ratios at Birth of the Muslim Population, Implied by Stable Population Analysis of the Age Distributions in 1951, 1961, and 1974 22
6. Own-Children Estimates of Total Fertility Rates, 1964-73, Under Alternative Adjustments 25
7. Intercensal Cohort Survivorship Probabilities by Sex and Religion, 1951-61 and 1961-74 27
8. Model Life Table Mortality Levels Implied by Intercensal Cohort Survivorship Probabilities for 1951-61 and 1961-74 28
9. Fertility Estimates from the PGE, 1963-65 33
10. Comparison of Current Fertility from the PGE (1963-65) with Retrospective Fertility from the DSEP (1961-62) 35
11. Fertility Measures for Currently Married Women, from NIS (1968-69) and BFS (1975-76) 37

12. Children Ever Borne by Sex, and Births in Year Before Survey by Age Group of Women, from BRSFM 1974 38
13. Comparison of Current and Retrospective Fertility Information, from BRSFM 1974 39
14. Comparison of Current and Retrospective Information on First Births, from BRSFM 1974 42
15. Recent Fertility Estimates from BFS, and Average Parities by Age of Mother, from BFS and Other Sources 44
16. Age-Specific Fertility Rates for 1966-70 and 1971-75, and P/F Ratios for All and First Births, from BFS 46
17. Crude Birth Rates and Total Fertility Rates, 1966-77: Matlab Thana 50
18. Proportions Ever Married by Sex and Age Group in 1951, 1961, and 1974 54
19. Proportions of the Female Population Currently Married by Age Group in 1951, 1961, and 1974, with Fertility Implications 55
20. Mortality Measures by Age and Sex, from PGE 1962-65 59
21. Estimates of Infant and Child Mortality by Calendar Year, 1952-60, Calculated Directly from the DSEP Fertility Histories: Central Bangladesh 60
22. Derivation of Child Mortality Estimates from Data on Children Ever Born and Surviving, DSEP 1961-62: Central Bangladesh 62
23. Population and Deaths by Sex and Age, and Partial Birth and Death Rates, from PGE 1964-65 66
24. Estimates of the Completeness of Death Recording and Rate of Natural Increase, from PGE 1964-65 68
25. Smoothing the Adjusted Age-Specific Mortality Rates from the PGE (1964-65), Using the Logit Transformation 69
26. Composite Life Tables by Sex, from PGE 1964-65 71
27. Child Mortality Estimates, from BRSFM 1974 72
28. Estimates of Survivorship Probabilities Derived from Data on Survival of Most Recent Child, BRSFM 1974 74
29. Population and Deaths by Sex and Age, and Partial Birth and Death Rates, from BRSFM 1974 76
30. Estimates of the Completeness of Death Recording and Rate of Natural Increase, from BRSFM 1974 78

31. Smoothing the Adjusted Age-Specific Mortality Rates from the BRSFM (1974), Using the Logit Transformation 79
32. Composite Life Tables by Sex, BRSFM 1974 81
33. Estimates of Female Adult Survivorship from Data on Survival of Mother, BRSFM 1974 83
34. Estimates of Male Adult Survivorship from Data on Survival of Father, BRSFM 1974 83
35. Survivorship Estimates and Their Time Location, Derived from Data on Survival of Mother, BRSFM 1974 85
36. Estimates of Female Adult Survivorship from Data on Survival of First Wife, BRSFM 1974 87
37. Estimates of Male Adult Survivorship from Data on Survival of First Husband, BRSFM 1974 87
38. Direct Estimates of Infant and Child Survivorship Probabilities from Fertility Histories, BFS 1976 89
39. Child Mortality Estimates Derived from Data on Children Dead Among Those Ever Born, BFS 1976 90
40. Crude Death Rates and Infant Mortality Rates, from CRL 1966-77: Matlab Thana 92
41. Average Parity by Age Group and Division, from BRSFM (1974) and 1974 Census 96
42. Child Mortality Levels by Division, Estimated from Proportion Dead Among Children Ever Born, BRSFM 1974 97
43. Proportions in Each Age Group by Sex in Smoothed Age Distributions for 1964-65 and 1974 101
44. Crude Death Rates, Crude Birth Rates, and Rates of Population Growth, 1964-65 and 1974 101

List of Figures

1. Age Distributions of the Census Population by Sex in 1951, 1961, and 1974 16
2. Partial Birth and Death Rates over Successive Ages by Sex, from PGE 1964-65 67
3. Plots of Logit Transformations of Adjusted and Standard Survivorship Functions from Age 5 by Sex, from PGE 1964-65 70
4. Partial Birth and Death Rates over Successive Ages by Sex, from BRSFM 1974 77
5. Plots of Logit Transformations of Adjusted and Standard Survivorship Functions from Age 5 by Sex, from BRSFM 1974 80
6. Plots of Logit Transformations of Standard Survivorship Probabilities Against Those Estimated from Orphanhood Data, BRSFM 1974 84
7. Plots of Logit Transformations of Standard Survivorship Probabilities from Age 20 Against Those Estimated from Widowhood Data, BRSFM 1974 88
8. Relative Deviations of Observed Age Distributions from Smoothed Age Distributions, 1964-65 and 1974 100

Preface

The Committee on Population and Demography was established in April 1977 by the National Research Council, in response to a request by the Agency for International Development (AID) of the U.S. Department of State. It was widely felt by those concerned that the time was ripe for a detailed review of levels and trends of fertility and mortality in the developing world. Although most people in the demographic community agree that mortality has declined in almost all developing countries during the last 30 years, there is uncertainty about more recent changes in mortality in some countries, about current levels of fertility, and about the existence and extent of recent changes in fertility.

In 1963, the Panel on Population Problems of the Committee on Science and Public Policy of the National Academy of Sciences published a report entitled The Growth of World Population. The appointment of that panel and the publication of its report were expressions of the concern then felt by scientists, as well as by other informed persons in many countries, about the implications of population trends. At that time, the most consequential trend was the pronounced and long-continued acceleration in the rate of increase of the population of the world, and especially of the population of the poorer countries. It was estimated in 1963 that the annual rate of increase of the global population had reached 2 percent, a rate that, if continued, would cause the total to double every 35 years. The disproportionate contribution of low-income areas to that acceleration was caused by rapid declines in mortality combined with high fertility that remained almost unchanged: the birth rate was nearly fixed or declined more modestly than the death rate.

Since the earlier report, however, the peak rate of growth in the world's population has apparently been passed. A dramatic decline in the birth rate in almost all the more developed countries has lowered their aggregate annual rate of increase to well below 1 percent, and the peak rate of increase has also apparently been passed in the less-developed parts of the world as a whole. A sharp decline in fertility in many low-income areas has more than offset the generally continued reduction in the death rate, although the rate of population increase remains high in almost all less-developed countries.

The causes of the reductions in fertility--whether they are the effect primarily of such general changes as lowered infant mortality, increasing education, urban rather than rural residence, and improving status of women or of such particular changes as spreading knowledge of and access to efficient methods of contraception or abortion--are strongly debated. There are also divergent views of the appropriate national and international policies on population in the face of these changing trends. The differences in opinion extend to different beliefs and assertions about what the population trends really are in many of the less-developed countries. Because births and deaths are recorded very incompletely in much of Africa, Asia, and Latin America, levels and trends of fertility and mortality must be estimated, and disagreement has arisen in some instances about reasonably reliable methods for estimating those levels and trends.

It was to examine these questions that the Committee on Population and Demography was established within the Assembly of Behavioral and Social Sciences of the National Research Council. It was funded for a period of three years by AID under Contract No. AID/pha-C-1161. The Committee has undertaken three major tasks:

1. To evaluate available evidence and prepare estimates of levels and trends of fertility and mortality in selected developing nations;

2. To improve the technologies for estimating fertility and mortality when only incomplete or inadequate data exist (including techniques of data collection);

3. To evaluate the factors determining the changes in birth rates in less-developed nations.

Given the magnitude of these tasks, the Committee decided to concentrate its initial efforts on the first two tasks; it initiated work on the third task in 1979.

The Committee approaches the first task through careful assessment, by internal and external comparison, and through analysis, by application of methods judged to be the most reliable methods, of all the data sources available. Each of the country studies therefore consists of the application of a range of methods to a number of data sets. Estimates of levels and recent trends are then developed on the grounds of their consistency and plausibility and the robustness of the individual methods from which they were derived.

The Committee's second task, refinement of methodology, is seen as a by-product of achieving the first. The application of particular methods to many different data sets from different countries and referring to different time periods will inevitably provide valuable information about the practical functioning of the methods themselves. Particular data sets might also require the development of new methodology or the refinement of existing techniques.

The Committee set three criteria for identifying countries to study in detail: that the country have a population large enough to be important in a world view; that there be some uncertainty about levels and recent trends of fertility or mortality; and that sufficient demographic data be available to warrant a detailed study. After a country has been selected for detailed study, the usual procedure is to set up a panel or working group of experts, both nationals of the country and others knowledgeable about the demography and demographic statistics of the country. The role of these panels and working groups, which generally include at least one Committee member, is to carry out the comparisons and analyses required. A small staff assists the Committee, panels, and working groups in their work.

As of early 1981, 162 population specialists, including 89 from developing countries, have been involved in the work of the Committee as members of panels or working groups. The Committee, the Assembly, and the National Research Council are grateful for the unpaid time and effort these experts have been willing to give.

Each country being studied has a different mix of data sources and different problems with data errors. Therefore, there is no standard pattern for all the reports. However, each report includes a summary of the main findings regarding estimates of fertility and mortality, a description of the data sources available, and a presentation of the analyses that were carried out, classified by type of data analyzed; detailed methodological descriptions are included where necessary in appendixes.

In some of the reports the estimates of fertility and mortality are presented as ranges. The use of a range is deliberate. It indicates that the panel and the Committee are confident that the range includes the true value, but have concluded that the evidence does not warrant selecting a single figure as best. The range conveys an important aspect (uncertainty) of the estimation. Ideally, in constructing an average for several populations in each of which estimation is presented as a range, an aggregate range would be calculated (as the population-weighted average of the constituents). The user who selects a single figure from the middle of the range does so at the risk of misleading simplification.

This report, on levels and recent trends of fertility and mortality in Bangladesh, is number 5 in a series of country reports to be issued by the Committee on Population and Demography. The Committee's thanks for this study are clearly due to the panel, whose members are listed above. Many panel members put considerable effort into the work of the panel, contributing to the organization of the panel's activities and to the data analysis reported here. Several outside organizations have also contributed to the study; special mention should be made of the Bangladesh Institute of Development Studies, which sponsored the panel workshop in Dacca in April 1979, and of the World Fertility Survey, which provided some special tabulations from the 1976 Bangladesh Fertility Survey. Special thanks are also due to the many individuals who contributed to the work of the panel. All the permanent staff of the Committee have contributed in some measure to this report; special thanks are due to the Committee's administrative assistant, Brenda Buchbinder, and to the Committee's editor, Katherine Miller, both of whom helped to turn a rough draft into a polished report.

A. J. COALE, Chairman
Committee on Population and Demography

Summary

Estimation of fertility and mortality levels and trends in Bangladesh is particularly difficult because conventional data in the form of complete registration of vital events and accurate census counts are absent and because the censuses and sample demographic surveys are characterized by very extensive misreporting of age, understatement of parity (at least among older women), and possible overall misenumeration. The analysis is further complicated by two special problems: extensive but unrecorded international migration and fluctuations in fertility and mortality caused by recent natural disasters or political upheavals. Nevertheless, it has been possible to establish approximate limits for recent fertility and mortality rates and for their evolution during years not characterized by catastrophes.

No sustained trend (up or down) in fertility in Bangladesh is evident from the early 1960s to 1975. In most years the total fertility rate was within the range of 6.8 to 7.3 and the crude birth rate was between 47 and 51 per thousand. The absence of any obvious trend does not mean that fertility was constant. On the basis of apparently quite reliable birth registration data for one area of rural Bangladesh, fertility in the area was particularly low in 1975, after the 1974 famine, but recovered in 1976 and 1977. Sharp fluctuations in national fertility rates also doubtless occurred in some years in response to natural disasters or political upheavals. It is therefore likely that average fertility over a period of several years may have been lower when the years in question encompass floods, small crops, and wartime disruptions; but there is no indication of tangibly lower fertility in recent "normal" years. The limited information on regional differentials suggests that there are no substantial differences in fertility by division.

Marriage historically has been early and universal for women. A recent tendency toward later marriage has had a relatively minor effect on overall fertility for two reasons: first, the mean age at first marriage has been so low that most of the decrease in the proportion currently married has been among teenage women; and second, there has been an offsetting tendency toward higher proportions married at the later childbearing years as a result of a lower incidence of widowhood.

Information on children ever born from the four sources available is reasonably consistent, although all the data sets show a tendency among older women to underreport their parity; average parities for younger women show almost no change from 1961-62, through 1968 and 1974, to 1975. Dual-record survey estimates of fertility for 1964-65, considered more reliable than those for the whole survey period 1962-65, are very consistent with adjusted retrospective estimates obtained from the 1974 survey data, the total fertility rates being 7.1 and 7.2, respectively.

The three surveys providing pregnancy histories--conducted in 1961-62, 1968, and 1975--all show pronounced declines in fertility during the decade prior to the survey date: the Demographic Survey of East Pakistan (DSEP) showed a decline in fertility of 22 percent between 1953-55 and 1957-60, the National Impact Survey (NIS) showed a decline of 20 percent between 1960-62 and 1966-68, and the Bangladesh Fertility Survey (BFS) showed a decline of 23 percent between 1966-71 and 1971-75. In each case, the fertility for the earlier period, from which the decline started, indicated a total fertility rate in excess of 8. In view of the similarities between the results of these surveys, and the obvious inconsistency of their results when combined, the information they provide on fertility trends has been discounted.

Estimates of child mortality are based largely on reports by mothers on the survival of their children--either in the aggregate form of survivors among all children ever born or in the more detailed form from pregnancy histories of date of birth and date of death, if dead, of each child. The mortality estimates derived from these two types of data are remarkably consistent and show little change in child mortality from the late 1950s to the mid-1970s, although the rates do fluctuate from year to year around the approximately constant level. Infant mortality, deaths under age 1 per thousand live births, seems to have averaged around 150 throughout the period; approximately 78 percent of children survived from birth to age 5. The only other national data on child mortality, provided by adjusted survey registration for the mid-1960s, are also consistent with the indirect estimates, showing an infant mortality rate of 154 and 76 percent of children surviving from birth to age 5. Though the information on mortality differentials by sex is not extensive, both direct and indirect data sources indicate lower female infant mortality, but higher female mortality between ages 1 and 5.

Two main types of data are available on which to base estimates of adult mortality, one being registered or reported deaths by age and sex as recorded by sample surveys and the other being information about the survival of close relatives, specifically parents and first spouses. Techniques exist to estimate the completeness of reporting of deaths and to convert the data on survival of relatives by age of respondent into traditional life table measures of mortality. After adjustment, the two available sets of the first type of data, on deaths by age, give rather similar estimates of adult mortality for 1964-65 and 1974, although the estimates of completeness are quite different for the two periods.

On the basis of these data, it appears that adult mortality is rather low in comparison to child mortality, that males have a marked advantage over females, and that for both sexes adult mortality fell somewhat between 1964-65 and 1974, increasing the expectation of life at birth by two to three years. The second type of data, on survival of relatives, gives higher estimates of adult mortality, but given that these estimates reflect average mortality over a considerable period of time before the survey, they are not inconsistent with the estimates obtained from adjusted deaths. Combining the estimates of child and adult mortality, the crude death rate is estimated to have been around 18 per thousand in the mid-1960s and around 17 per thousand in the mid-1970s.

The available estimates of fertility and mortality indicate that the population of Bangladesh has had a high rate of natural increase in the recent past, in the range of 2.9 to 3.4 percent per annum for most years during the period from the early 1960s to 1975 and has increased only slightly over the period. The population age distributions agree with these conclusions reasonably well, stable population analysis of the 1961 and 1974 age distributions indicating a birth rate in the range of 44 to 48 per thousand. However, the population total, as recorded by the censuses, has not been growing at anything like that rate, the increase in the enumerated population between 1961 and 1974 being only 2.6 percent.

Part of the discrepancy is accounted for by emigration, primarily of Hindus, throughout the period 1951 to 1974. However, even for the Muslim population, which is unlikely to have experienced net emigration, there is a discrepancy between the estimates of natural increase and the observed rates of intercensal population growth. Another possibility is that changes in enumeration completeness from census to census have affected the observed rate of population growth, although no conclusive evidence of such changes could be found. The inconsistency could also be explained if the rate of natural increase has been somewhat overestimated, either as a result of the birth rate being overestimated or--and perhaps more likely--as a result of the death rate being underestimated. It is also possible that migratory flows have not been fully accounted for. Although we are confident that the estimates of fertility and mortality presented in this report are the best that can be made given the data available, we have not been able to resolve rigorously the apparent inconsistency of these estimates with the rate of growth of the enumerated population of Bangladesh.

1 Introduction

Bangladesh was selected for detailed study by the Committee on Population and Demography mainly on the grounds of population size; the 71 million inhabitants recorded by the 1974 population census made it the eighth most populous nation on earth and by far the most densely populated country among the top 20. A lack of certain types of demographic information, particularly those derived from a vital registration system, has been compensated for to some extent by a number of sample surveys, but as a result of the shortcomings of the data there has been considerable uncertainty about recent levels and trends of fertility and mortality.

A panel for Bangladesh was established in mid-1978 to take responsibility for carrying out a study on behalf of the Committee. In April 1979, a three-day workshop was held in Dacca under the sponsorship of the Bangladesh Institute for Development Studies (BIDS). A number of working papers by panel members and others were presented and discussed at this workshop, the proceedings of which have recently been published (Khan, 1981). At the completion of the workshop, the panel discussed general conclusions and identified additional analyses that needed to be carried out in order to complete the demographic picture as well as possible, given the data available. A report was then drafted, discussed and amended at a final panel meeting, and submitted to the

Committee on Population and Demography and to the National Research Council for review.

This report summarizes the evidence reviewed by the panel in arriving at its conclusions. In some cases, the details of the analytical procedures used are lengthy and technical, and in order to keep this report within reasonable bounds, such details have been summarized and suitable references made to the source material. Similarly, raw data published elsewhere have not been reproduced. However, where the consistency, or lack of it, of the results of a particular analysis have a bearing on the validity, or otherwise, of the conclusions drawn, the results have been presented in sufficient detail to demonstrate that consistency.

The introductory chapter that follows provides a brief description of Bangladesh and its people and describes the major sources of demographic data and the information available from them. Chapter 2 presents estimates of fertility, classified by the type of evidence on which they are based. Chapter 3 is concerned with changes in age patterns of marriage and marital dissolution and their impact on fertility. Chapter 4 presents estimates of mortality classified by the type of evidence on which they are based. Chapter 5 reviews the evidence concerning regional variations in fertility and mortality. Finally, in Chapter 6, the fertility and mortality estimates obtained are combined in order to examine rates of natural increase and population growth.

BANGLADESH AND ITS PEOPLE*

Bangladesh is a deltaic land covering an area of 143,998 square kilometers. It lies between latitudes 20°30' and 26°45' North and longitudes 88°00' and 92°56' East. It is bounded by India to the east, north, and west and shares a short frontier with Burma on the southeast. To the south lies the Bay of Bengal, and to the northeast lies the broad mass of the Assam range on the Shillong plateau. The Himalayas lie not far from the boundary on the northwest.

---

*This section is adapted from Section 1.4 of the first report on the Bangladesh Fertility Survey (Bangladesh, 1978).

More than 85 percent of Bangladesh is flat alluvial plain crisscrossed by the mighty rivers Padma, Meghna, and Jamuna and by their innumerable tributaries. These rivers play a significant role in the lives of the people and in the physical environment of Bangladesh: they provide a cheap means of transport, serve as drainage channels, ensure an abundant supply of fish, and above all, deposit on the land every year an enormous quantity of fertilizing silt. About 92 percent of the population is rural and 80 percent are engaged in agriculture.

Mean annual temperatures vary between 57° and 80°F. The annual rainfall varies from 50 inches in the west to 100 inches in the southeast and to 200 inches in the Assam hills in the north. This heavy rainfall is associated with tropical cyclones and floods which on numerous occasions have devastated the country and caused frequent suffering for millions of its people.

Muslims ruled the country from the early thirteenth century until the eighteenth century, when the British took over and administered the area until 1947. In 1947, the partition of India took place and the two independent states of India and Pakistan were created. Pakistan consisted of the Muslim areas of the northwest and northeast parts of the Indian subcontinent, known respectively as West Pakistan and East Pakistan (called Muslim East Bengal before 1947). The 1,500 miles of foreign territory separating the two wings, the differences in climate, topography, language, sociocultural characteristics, and above all an unequal economic development and political representation resulted in the de facto existence of two separate nations within Pakistan. Following a political debacle that culminated in the War of Liberation in 1971, Bangladesh emerged as a sovereign and independent state on December 16, 1971.

For administrative purposes, Bangladesh has four divisions: Dacca, Chittagong, Rajshahi, and Khulna. At the time of the 1974 census, these divisions were subdivided into 19 districts. Each district is divided into subdivisions, which in turn are subdivided into thanas, classified as rural, urban, or semi-urban. The 1974 census listed 422 thanas, which in turn were subdivided into 4,350 unions. A union is comprised of a group of villages; the 1974 census reported the existence of 68,385 villages.

Dacca is the capital city of Bangladesh. Chittagong, Khulna, and Narayanganj are the three other principal cities. The official language is Bengali, which is spoken and understood throughout the country.

More than 85 percent of the population is Muslim. Other religious groups are Hindus, who constitute 13 percent of the population, and Buddhists and Christians, who constitute less than 2 percent. The Hindu population can conveniently be further subdivided into Caste Hindus and Scheduled Caste Hindus, the latter formerly known as untouchables.

Twenty-four percent of the population aged 5 and over is literate. The proportions of literate males and females are 33 percent and 15 percent, respectively.

Bangladesh enjoys fertile agricultural lands. Rice, jute, sugar cane, tea, tobacco, oil seeds, pulses, wheat, and potatoes are the principal crops. A sizeable quantity of tea is exported, though jute and jute manufactured goods account for more than 80 percent of exports.

Although Bangladesh is primarily an agricultural country, there are some large-scale industries based on local raw materials. Jute manufacturing, paper and newsprint, sugar, cement, chemical fertilizer, and textile industries are major industrial activities. Several natural gas fields with large reserves have recently been discovered.

DEMOGRAPHIC DATA SOURCES

The Indian subcontinent has a long history of census taking, stretching back to 1871-72. The tradition of decennial censuses was continued after partition, and censuses of Pakistan were held in 1951 and 1961. These two censuses were extensively tabulated for the east and west wings of Pakistan separately, making it possible to study the area that is now Bangladesh. The demographic content of these two censuses, however, was limited to questions about age, sex, birthplace, and marital status. No census was held in 1971, because of the turmoil of the War of Liberation. The first census of independent Bangladesh was carried out in 1974. In addition to information on age, sex, and marital status, this most recent census collected data on children ever born. It was followed that same year by a post-enumeration coverage check and by a special retrospective demographic survey, which is described below.

Although its census data are reasonably extensive, Bangladesh is not so favorably endowed with the other traditional source of demographic data, vital registration. A system of birth and death registration does exist, but the coverage is so incomplete that no attempt is made to tabulate the information collected, and no vital registration data are available for the period covered by this study.

Fortunately, the lack of vital registration data is compensated for to some extent by the availability of data from a number of demographic sample surveys. The first national survey during the period under consideration was the Population Growth Estimation (PGE) Experiment, a dual-record survey conducted from 1962 to 1965. In most sample areas demographic events were recorded both by a continuous (longitudinal) registration system (LR) and by a cross-sectional survey (CS) carried out in each sample area four times a year. Total events, adjusted for omission, were then estimated by matching the events recorded by the two collection systems and then applying the Chandrasekaran and Deming (1949) formula to matched and unmatched events. (This formula estimates the number of events missed by both systems from the number covered by both systems, the number covered by registration but not survey, and the number covered by survey but not registration.)

In East Pakistan, the PGE sample covered ten rural and two urban clusters, each with a population of approximately 5,000, although four of the rural areas were not covered by the dual-record system, two being covered only by the LR method, and two more being covered only by the CS method. One district, Chittagong Hill Tracts, accounting for about 1 percent of the population, was excluded from the sample frame.

During 1968 and 1969, the Pakistan Family Planning Council conducted the National Impact Survey (NIS) in a sample of about 120 rural villages and 50 urban electoral units in each wing of Pakistan. In East Pakistan, the sample covered about 3,000 households. A simple household questionnaire was used to select eligible men and women for more detailed questions, the criteria for eligibility being that a woman should be ever-married and under 55 and that a man should currently be married to an eligible woman. A detailed pregnancy history, together with information about the survival of each child, was collected from all eligible women. Unfortunately, more has been published about the planning and organization of the survey than about its results, and the only information tabulated is for currently married women under 50.

The next important national survey was the Bangladesh Retrospective Survey of Fertility and Mortality (BRSFM), conducted at the same time as the 1974 census post-enumeration check in a 0.5 percent sample of census blocks. A total of 482 such blocks and a population of about 364,000 were included in the sample. The survey collected information on age, sex, marital status, children ever born by sex of child, children surviving by sex of child, date of most recent birth and whether the child was still alive, survival of mother, survival of father, survival of first spouse, religion, education, and deaths in the household in the two years before the survey by age, sex, and approximate date.

The BRSFM was soon followed by the Bangladesh Fertility Survey (BFS), organized under the auspices of the World Fertility Survey (WFS) program, and carried out between December 1975 and March 1976. With a sample of about 6,000 households from 240 sampling units, the BFS followed the standard pattern of WFS surveys, starting with a household questionnaire to collect certain basic demographic information about each household member and using that information to identify ever-married women under the age of 50, who were then reinterviewed to obtain complete pregnancy histories and other fertility-related data. The BFS differed from some WFS surveys in that all eligible women from the household schedule were reinterviewed, not only one per household.

Despite the fact that they cannot be regarded as nationally representative, three other sources of data deserve mention. The first, a population surveillance scheme in Matlab thana, is valuable because of its remarkable continuity and the high quality of the data collected. In 1966, the Cholera Research Laboratory (now the International Centre for Diarrhoeal Disease Research, Bangladesh) established in Matlab thana of Comilla district a longitudinal demographic surveillance system that combined registration of vital events with periodic censuses. In 1968, the initial study population of over 100,000 was virtually doubled by the inclusion of additional villages, but since then the study area has remained unchanged. The apparently high quality of the Matlab data may be accounted for by the effort put into their collection and by the heavy concentration of staff used, there being one full-time field worker for every

200 households, each of which is visited every two or three days. The second subnational data source is an extension of the surveillance system of the Cholera Research Laboratory, in Teknaf thana of Chittagong district. A complete census of the thana population of 82,000 was carried out around the end of 1974, and 15,000 of the population were covered by the surveillance system until mid-1976, when the population covered was increased to 40,000 and recording of births, deaths, marriages, and migration was started. It is assumed that the data available from the Teknaf surveillance system are of high quality, by analogy with Matlab, though the results are too recent to have been exhaustively tested. The third subnational data source, the 1961-62 Demographic Survey of East Pakistan, collected maternity histories from a sample of areas of central Bangladesh and is useful primarily for its information on infant mortality. It is discussed in detail in the chapter on mortality.

Table 1 summarizes the data sources used in preparing this report and shows the types of demographic information they provide.

POPULATION CHARACTERISTICS AS RECORDED BY CENSUSES

Population Growth

The population censuses of 1951, 1961, and 1974 show relatively modest rates of population growth for the period, a rate of 1.9 percent between 1951 and 1961, increasing to 2.6 percent for the period 1961 to 1974. Underlying these rates, however, is considerable variation in population growth by religion. Table 2 shows the enumerated populations by sex and religion for the three censuses and the implied population growth rates for each religious group. The Muslim population grew much more rapidly than the population as a whole, the growth rate being 2.4 percent between 1951 and 1961, and 3.1 percent between 1961 and 1974. Comparable rates for Caste Hindus were 0.5 percent and 0.9 percent; growth rates for the Scheduled Caste were negative, -0.1 percent and -0.4 percent for the two periods.

The recorded rate of growth of the Muslim population is not inconsistent with expected levels of natural increase, but the recorded rates of growth of the other two important segments of the population, the Caste and Scheduled Caste Hindus, are well below what would be

TABLE 1 Data Sources by Type of Evidence: Bangladesh

	Data Source								
	Population Censuses			PGE	NIS[a]	BRSFM	BFS	DSEP	CRL[b]
Type of Evidence	1951	1961	1974	1962-65	1968-69	1974	1975-76	1961-62	1966-77
Age-sex distribution									
Five-year age groups	x	x	x	x		x	x	x	x
Single years			x	x		x	x		
Own children						x			
Births by age group of mother				x	x	x	x	x	x
Deaths by age group and sex				x		x			x
Children ever born by age of mother					x	x	x	x	

Children surviving by age of mother					x	x	x	x	
Survival of mother						x			
Survival of father						x			
Survival of first spouse						x			
Complete pregnancy history					x		x	x	
Survival of most recently born child						x	x		
Marital status	x	x	x	x		x	x		x[c]

---

[a] All data for currently married women only.
[b] Matlab thana for all years; Teknaf for 1976 and 1977 only.
[c] Matlab 1974 only.

TABLE 2 Enumerated Population by Sex and Religion in 1951, 1961, and 1974, and Intercensal Growth Rates: Bangladesh

Population Group	1951 Census (thousands)	Intercensal Rate of Growth (percent)	1961 Census (thousands)	Intercensal Rate of Growth (percent)	1974 Census (thousands)
All Religions					
Males	21,938	1.85	26,349	2.61	37,071
Females	19,995	2.04	24,491	2.60	34,407
Total	41,932	1.94	50,840	2.61	71,478
Muslims					
Males	16,897	2.31	21,248	3.05	31,667
Females	15,330	2.50	19,642	3.08	29,371
Total	32,227	2.40	40,890	3.06	61,038
Caste Hindus					
Males	2,182	0.29	2,246	1.02	2,567
Females	2,006	0.66	2,141	0.74	2,359
Total	4,187	0.47	4,387	0.89	4,926
Scheduled Caste Hindus					
Males	2,619	-0.21	2,565	-0.38	2,440
Females	2,433	-0.02	2,428	-0.39	2,306
Total	5,052	-0.12	4,993	-0.39	4,747

expected. Given that errors in declaration of religion are extremely unlikely in Bangladesh for cultural reasons, there are two possible explanations for the low growth rate of the non-Muslim population: that completeness of enumeration by religion changed from one census to the next or that Hindus have been leaving Bangladesh in fairly large numbers throughout the period.

A detailed study of migration to and from Bangladesh during the period 1901 to 1961 (Khan, 1974) estimates a net emigration of Hindus of around 1.1 million for the period 1951 to 1961, a number consistent with a somewhat more reasonable rate of natural increase for the Hindu population during the period of 1.5 percent. The same study suggests that there was little net migration of the Muslim population of Bangladesh during the period, though it estimates that between 1941 and 1951 there was a net immigration of 0.7 million Muslims and a net emigration of 2.5 million Hindus. Direct migration between Bangladesh and Pakistan seems to have been very limited (Khan, 1974).

Looking at the population as a whole, the post-enumeration check of the 1974 census indicated an underenumeration of 19.3 percent in the four major towns and 6.5 percent elsewhere, giving an adjusted population of 76,398,000 for March 1, 1974. However, not much confidence can be felt in these estimates, because households in the census and those in the post-enumeration check could be matched in only 59 of the 482 sampled census blocks (Bangladesh, 1977). A comparable correction cannot be made for 1951 because there was no post-enumeration check; in 1961, the post-enumeration check indicated a small overenumeration. Because questions of the relative accuracy of census enumeration remain unresolved, we have used unadjusted population figures for each census year throughout this report.

Age and Sex Distribution of the Population

Age reporting is rather poor in Bangladesh, revealing massive digital preference and systematic overrepresentation or underrepresentation of particular age ranges. Figure 1 and Table 3 show, by sex, the proportions in successive five-year age groups reported by the three population censuses. In addition, Table 3 shows the proportions as reported by each of the data

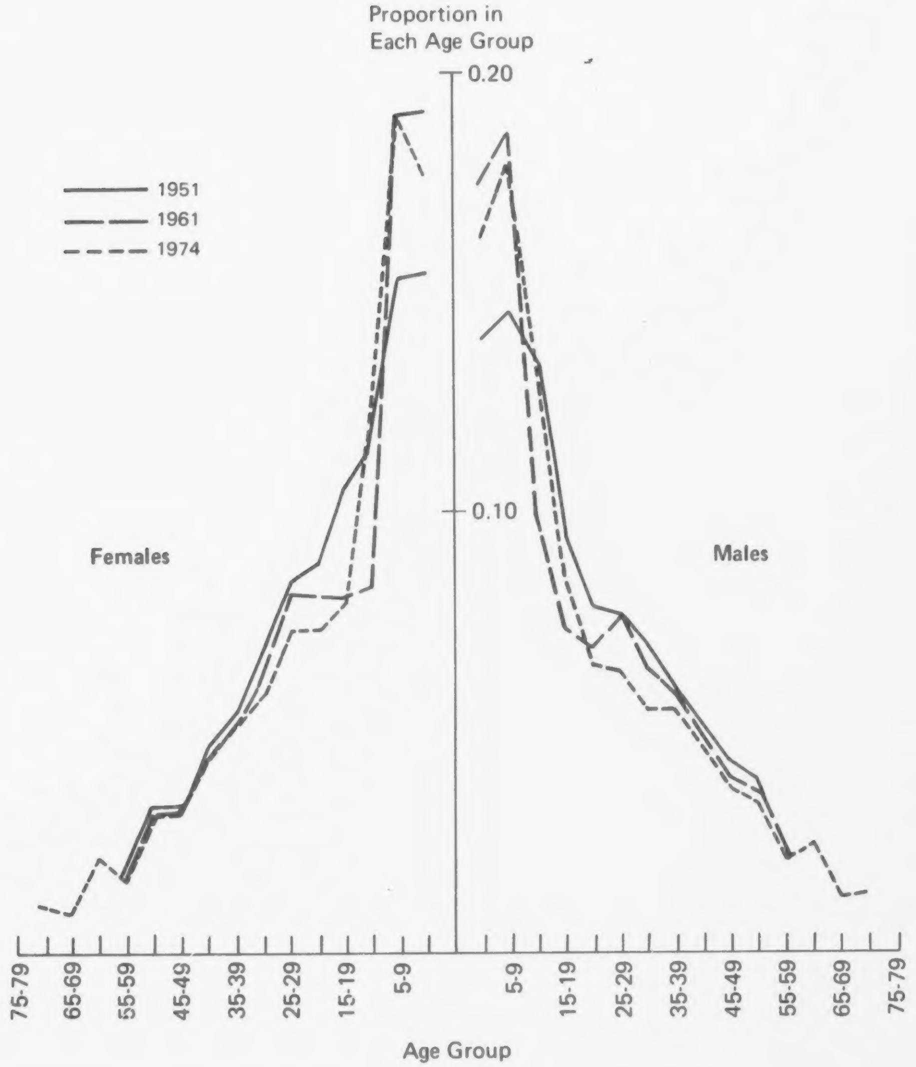


FIGURE 1 Age distributions of the census population by sex in 1951, 1961, and 1974: Bangladesh.

sources shown in Table 1 that provide a national age-sex distribution.

The irregularities of the census age distributions are clear to see; indeed, the 1951 age distribution in five-year groups was published only on a restricted basis because of doubts about its accuracy. Not only are the age distributions obviously affected by error--of age reporting or of completeness of enumeration--but the

TABLE 3 Distribution of the Population by Age and Sex, from Major Sources, 1951-75: Bangladesh

	Proportion of the Population Reported in Each Age Group					
	1951 Census	1961 Census	1964-65 PGE	1974 Census	1974 BRSFM	1975 BFS
Males						
0-4	.139	.174	.164	.162	.145	.144
5-9	.145	.185	.178	.178	.167	.172
10-14	.135	.099	.127	.135	.145	.151
15-19	.094	.073	.075	.085	.090	.093
20-24	.078	.069	.059	.065	.072	.080
25-29	.077	.076	.069	.063	.070	.065
30-34	.069	.064	.066	.055	.057	.051
35-39	.060	.059	.063	.055	.056	.050
40-44	.052	.048	.047	.047	.047	.038
45-49	.043	.039	.040	.037	.037	.034
50-54	.039	.036	.036	.035	.033	.029
55-59	.023	.023	.022	.021	.021	.023
60-64	.028	.056	.025	.025	.024	.022
65-59			.011	.012	.012	.017
70-74	.019		.009	.013	.013	.012
75+			.009	.012	.012	.015
Females						
0-4	.154	.191	.177	.176	.160	.156
5-9	.153	.190	.189	.189	.180	.176
10-14	.117	.083	.105	.122	.136	.147
15-19	.106	.081	.078	.080	.088	.105
20-24	.088	.081	.079	.073	.077	.085
25-29	.084	.082	.079	.073	.076	.072
30-34	.068	.063	.064	.059	.059	.048
35-39	.055	.051	.051	.052	.052	.043
40-44	.047	.045	.047	.044	.043	.039
45-49	.032	.033	.034	.032	.033	.034
50-54	.035	.033	.038	.032	.031	.025
55-59	.020	.018	.018	.017	.018	.027
60-64	.027	.049	.021	.022	.020	.016
65-69			.008	.009	.009	.011
70-74	.015		.006	.011	.010	.007
75+		.007	.010	.009	.007	
Sex Ratio of the Population (males/female)	1.097	1.076	1.066	1.077	1.075	1.052

patterns of error are not consistent from one census to the next. Thus, although there seems to be a general tendency for there to be too many children aged 5-9 relative to those aged 0-4, the 1961 census also has a sharp deficit of population aged 10-14 and a marked plateau between 15 and 34. One explanation offered for the sharp change in the recorded age distribution between 1951 and 1961 has been the change in the lower age limit of coverage for occupational questions--from 12 years old in 1951 to 10 years old in 1961 (Bean et al., 1966). It is suggested that enumerators in 1961, in order to avoid putting the extra questions, systematically transferred respondents to ages below the limit, thereby inflating the population under 10 in 1961. Such inconsistencies in the error patterns make it impossible to adjust the age distributions satisfactorily, in turn making it difficult to use them for the estimation of their underlying demographic parameters.

The age distributions of the sample surveys are not displayed in Figure 1, to avoid overburdening it with basically similar distributions. The 1964-65 PGE distribution is similar to the 1961 census distribution, except for some transfer from under 10 to the 10-14 age group. The BRSFM age distribution is very similar from age 30 onward to that of the 1974 census, of which it was a sample; under age 30, however, the BRSFM age distribution is substantially older than the census age distribution. The BFS age distribution is, broadly speaking, rather similar to the BRSFM age distribution.

It is doubtful whether methods for estimating demographic parameters from population age distributions should be applied in Bangladesh. The extensive migration that took place around the time of partition, and the possibility that there has been substantial migration since, raise questions as to whether the population can be regarded as stable or even quasi-stable, though migration of whole families has little effect on an age distribution. Serious problems with age reporting or completeness of coverage have distorted the age distribution under 15 so severely that it is extremely unlikely that applying reverse-survival or own-children techniques to the enumerated populations could yield satisfactory fertility estimates. However, the estimation techniques can be as useful in highlighting weaknesses in the data as they are in producing reliable estimates, so an attempt has been made to analyze the Bangladeshi age distributions.

Stable population analysis has been applied to the 1951, 1961, and 1974 age distributions of the Muslim population. This subpopulation was selected because it seems to have been less affected by migration over the period than the whole population and can therefore be expected to have a less distorted age distribution. Such analysis will be distorted only mildly by migration of complete families, so long as an estimate of child mortality rather than an observed growth rate is used to fit the stable population. There seemed no reason to prefer the age distribution of one sex to that of the other, so both have been analyzed separately.

In each case, the proportion of the population under a given age has been matched with the proportion under that age in the "North" family of stable population models (Coale and Demeny, 1966), fixing either the rate of population growth or the mortality level. Stable populations based on the "North" age pattern of mortality were used because the mortality patterns observed by the PGE and BRSFM surveys appeared to conform more closely to the "North" pattern than to any of the other three regional patterns (see chapter on mortality). When using an indicator of child mortality such as 1(2) to fit a stable population, the choice of mortality family does not greatly affect the results (U.N., 1967). For 1961 and 1974, the growth rates used in the analysis were taken from the observed intercensal growth rates for the Muslim population during the period before the census (as shown in Table 2), rounded to the nearest figure for which stable populations are tabulated by Coale and Demeny; for 1951, two growth rates were used, covering the range suggested by extrapolating backward the observed rates after 1951 and extrapolating forward those for before 1951. Mortality level 11 was used for both 1961 and 1974 because the analysis of child survival data from the BRSFM indicates that level 11 is appropriate for the years prior to 1974 and the PGE survey gives similar estimates of child mortality for the early 1960s.

Table 4 shows the observed proportions under each age, the birth rate in the matching stable population, and the median birth rate for each age distribution and fitting parameter. Table 5 shows the birth rate for the population as a whole (both sexes) and the sex ratio at birth implied by the combination of the estimated birth rates from Table 4 and the enumerated populations by sex.

Three major points stand out from Tables 4 and 5. First, the proportion of the population under age 5 is

TABLE 4 Stable Population Estimates of the Male and Female Birth Rates of the Muslim Population in 1951, 1961, and 1974: Bangladesh

		Males			Females		
			Stable Population Birth Rate[a] (per thousand)			Stable Population Birth Rate[a] (per thousand)	
			Fixed Parameter			Fixed Parameter	
Census Year	Age a	Proportion of Population Under Age a	r = .015	r = .020	Proportion of Population Under Age a	r = .015	r = .020
1951	5	.1425	36.1	33.4	.1580	43.1	40.0
	10	.2900	45.6	40.9	.3147	55.0	49.5
	15	.4263	54.0	47.6	.4318	55.9	49.6
	20	.5196	50.9	44.9	.5387	58.1	51.3
	25	.5975	47.3	42.1	.6269	58.0	51.4
	30	.6745	47.1	42.3	.7106	61.1	54.3
	35	.7427	47.4	42.9	.7780	62.4	55.8
	40	.8024	48.0	43.8	.8325	62.9	56.6
	Median		47.3	42.6		58.0	51.4
			Fixed Parameter			Fixed Parameter	
			Level 11	r = .025		Level 11	r = .025
1961[b]	10	.3640	55.1	65.5	.3890	58.7	77.0
	20	.5344	45.4	43.6	.5522	47.0	49.6
	40	.8047	43.4	40.6	.8306	47.9	50.7
	60	.9465	42.3	40.7	.9550	47.3	48.2
	Median		44.4	42.2		47.6	50.1

			Fixed Parameter			Fixed Parameter	
			Level 11	r = .030		Level 11	r = .030
1974[c]	5	.1666	43.3	38.0	.1812	46.5	44.4
	10	.3470	51.8	51.3	.3732	55.5	61.9
	15	.4870	53.1	54.0	.4930	53.9	58.8
	20	.5642	49.7	46.6	.5732	50.0	50.2
	25	.6283	46.1	40.4	.6459	47.9	45.9
	35	.7468	43.1	36.8	.7775	47.5	45.3
	45	.8482	42.7	37.7	.8572	47.9	46.3
	Median		46.1	40.4		47.9	48.3

---

[a] Calculated by holding constant either the population growth rate or the mortality level: r = rate of growth, Level 11 = mortality level 11 in the Coale-Demeny "North" model life tables.

[b] For 1961, data by religion are published only by broad age groups.

[c] For age 25 and over, data by religion are published only by 10-year age groups.

TABLE 5 Population Birth Rates and Sex Ratios at Birth of the Muslim Population, Implied by Stable Population Analysis of the Age Distributions in 1951, 1961, and 1974: Bangladesh

		Males		Females		Implied Parameters for Total Population	
Year	Fixed Parameter[a]	Birth Rate (per thousand)	Population (thousands)	Birth Rate (per thousand)	Population (thousands)	Birth Rate (per thousand)	Sex Ratio at Birth (males/female)
1951	r = .015	47.3	16,897	58.0	15,330	52.4	0.899
	r = .020	42.6		51.4		46.8	0.914
1961	r = .025	42.2	21,248	50.1	19,642	46.0	0.911
	Level 11	44.4		47.6		45.9	1.009
1974	r = .030	40.4	31,667	48.3	29,371	44.2	0.902
	Level 11	46.1		47.9		47.0	1.038

[a] As in Table 4, r = rate of growth and Level 11 = mortality level 11 from Coale-Demeny "North" model life tables.

too low in 1951 and 1974 (and also in 1961 for the total population, as can be seen in Figure 1), whereas the proportion under age 10 is too high in 1961 and 1974 (particularly in 1961) and the proportion under age 15 is too high in 1974. In 1951, on the other hand, the proportions under 10 and under 15 are not implausibly high.

Second, the male and female birth rates estimated using a fixed rate of growth are very different, the female birth rate being almost 10 points higher than the male in each case, whereas the sex-specific birth rates derived using a constant mortality level are much more similar, the difference being only two or three points. This contrast is underlined in Table 5, which shows that the effect of the high female birth rate relative to the male birth rate (as estimated by using a fixed growth rate) outweighs the masculinity of the population and implies the implausible sex ratio at birth of only some 90 males per 100 females, whereas the less extreme differentials in birth rate by sex (obtained by using the fixed mortality level) imply sex ratios at birth of around 101 and 104 males per 100 females. The estimating procedure based on a fixed growth rate is more vulnerable to age reporting errors, and a tendency for males to exaggerate their ages relative to females may account for at least some of the discrepancy observed in the cases based on a fixed growth rate. It may also be that the actual growth rates of the population by sex are not the same, though the evidence in Table 2 fails to support such a contention.

The third point concerns the age detail of the birth rate estimates in Table 4. When stable population analysis is applied to a population that is experiencing declining mortality, the birth rate estimates obtained will tend to fall as the upper age boundary of the group being considered rises. There is no evidence of such a pattern for 1951, and the existence of such a pattern for 1961 cannot be determined because there is insufficient age detail. In 1974, however, there does seem to be a clear tendency for the birth rate estimates to fall as the age boundary rises, suggesting that mortality may have been declining some time before 1974.

Clearly, the estimates presented in Tables 4 and 5 are not consistent enough to support the drawing of firm conclusions. However, on the basis of the relatively more consistent estimate obtained by fixing the mortality level on the basis of an estimate of 1(2), it seems likely that the birth rate was in the high 40s in 1961 and in 1974.

The age distribution analysis described above shows that the misreporting of age under age 10 is particularly severe, with the 0-4 age group being too small, for reasons either of omission or of age misreporting, and the 5-9 age group being too large, presumably because of age misreporting. With such distorted data, it is very doubtful whether the reverse-survival techniques could be successfully used to estimate fertility in the years prior to each census. However, for one data set it has been possible to apply the own-children variant of the reverse-survival technique. A special hand tabulation of the results of the 1974 BRSFM linked mothers with their own children living in the same household, and the results have been analyzed by Rahman (1979) and Hobcraft (1976). Table 6 shows the estimates given by Rahman and by Hobcraft of total fertility rate by year and by type of adjustment applied to the data. The estimates based upon the unsmoothed age distribution of the children (adjustments III, IV, and V) are very erratic, being implausibly high for some years and low for others. To draw conclusions about trends from such obviously distorted data would be unwise, and even fertility level can be inferred only within a broad range; the average total fertility rates vary with type of adjustment from 6.4 to 7.1.

Completeness of Enumeration

Population growth rates obtained from a series of censuses are sensitive to changes in the completeness of enumeration of the censuses, and estimates of demographic parameters based on such growth rates in combination with population age structures are therefore suspect. The observed growth rates for the whole population of Bangladesh, shown in Table 2, are surprisingly low given independent evidence about the rate of natural increase. The report on the post-enumeration check of the 1974 census suggests that the enumerated population should be corrected upward by 19.3 percent in the four major cities and by 6.5 percent elsewhere, although there were reportedly some problems with the post-enumeration check itself (Bangladesh, 1977). The post-enumeration check for the 1961 census suggested an overcount of 1.5 percent, though estimates suggesting a net undercount,

TABLE 6 Own-Children Estimates of Total Fertility Rates, 1964-73, Under Alternative Adjustments: Bangladesh

Part A. Estimated Total Fertility Rates by Adjustment (births per thousand population)

Year	Adjustment I	Adjustment II	Adjustment III	Adjustment IV	Adjustment V
1973	6.77	7.36	4.14	3.86	4.38
1972	6.70	7.05	4.73	4.41	4.96
1971	6.84	7.19	5.85	5.47	5.94
1970	6.77	7.12	6.70	6.25	7.02
1969	6.95	7.31	7.27	6.79	7.21
1968	6.72	7.07	7.57	7.07	7.82
1967	6.52	6.86	8.03	7.50	8.06
1966	6.60	6.94	7.33	6.85	7.78
1965	6.60	6.95	10.73	10.01	9.78
1964	6.63	6.97	5.86	5.47	6.31

Part B. Explanation of Adjustments

		Adjustment for Misreporting		Adjustment for Underenumeration	
Adjustment	Author	Women	Children	Women	Children
I	Rahman	Smoothed	Smoothed	None	1.7%
II	Rahman	Smoothed	Smoothed	6.8%	14.2%
III	Rahman	Smoothed	Unsmoothed	6.8%	7.1%
IV	Rahman	Smoothed	Unsmoothed	6.8%	None
V	Hobcraft	Unsmoothed	Unsmoothed	None	None

Source: Rahman (1979).

such as one of 8.62 percent by Krotki (1965), have been made using demographic analysis.

Cohort survivorship probabilities estimated from the age distributions of successive censuses are often better indicators of variations in enumeration completeness or of net migration than of the level of mortality, except at advanced ages. Implausibly low estimates of survivorship indicate emigration, particular kinds of age reporting errors, or a relative underenumeration at the second census, whereas implausibly high survivorship estimates indicate immigration, different types of age reporting errors, or an increase in enumeration completeness at the second census relative to the first. An examination of cohort survivorship probabilities for the two intercensal periods has been made by Hill

(1981). Table 7 shows the observed survivorship probabilities for closed and open-ended cohorts, by sex, for the periods 1951-61 and 1961-74. (The term "open-ended cohort" is used to mean the whole population of a given age or older at some initial point.) In view of the marked differences in the observed population growth rates for the major religious groups in the population, survivorship probabilities for Muslims, Caste Hindus, and Scheduled Caste Hindus were examined separately.

Although certain features stand out from Table 7 (notably that the Muslim population experiences the highest survivorship probabilities, followed by the Caste Hindus, with the Scheduled Caste giving the lowest survivorship probabilities, and that some Muslim cohorts between 1961 and 1974 imply survivorship ratios in excess of 1.0), it is not easy to interpret such survivorship probabilities. To make the interpretation easier, they have been converted into equivalent mortality levels in the "North" family of Coale-Demeny model life tables. The results are shown in Table 8. In estimating equivalent mortality levels, allowance has been made for the age structure of a stable population having a growth rate of 2.0 percent between 1951 and 1961, and 2.5 percent between 1961 and 1974. The choice of growth rate is unimportant in the case of the closed cohorts, though the assumed age structure and growth rate are important for the open-ended cohorts, the effect being greatest for open-ended groups starting from age 10, 20, or 30 and for low-mortality cases. In extreme cases, a change of 5 per thousand in the growth rate can make a difference of two levels in the mortality estimates, an upward change in the growth rate leading to an estimate of heavier mortality.

The results for the period 1951-61 are reasonably consistent and suggest certain patterns of age reporting, notably an increasing tendency to exaggerate age as age increases (suggested by the systematic pattern whereby the mortality level of the open-ended survivorship ratios rises with age) and a relative underenumeration of 10- to 19-year-olds in 1961 relative to 0- to 9-year-olds in 1951 (suggested by the low mortality levels obtained for the 1951 cohort aged 0-9).

Other notable features of the 1951-61 results are the low survivorship ratios, indicated by low mortality levels in Table 8, for Caste Hindus and the even lower ratios for the Scheduled Caste. The estimated mortality

TABLE 7 Intercensal Cohort Survivorship Probabilities by Sex and Religion, 1951-61 and 1961-74: Bangladesh

Part A. 1951-61

Closed Cohorts			Open-Ended Cohorts		
Age Group in 1951	Males	Females	Age Boundary in 1951	Males	Females
Muslims					
0-9	.739	.664	0	.800	.783
10-29	.884	.901	10	.825	.837
30-49	.803	.802	30	.754	.750
			50	.650	.636
Caste Hindus					
0-9	.761	.674	0	.687	.696
10-29	.653	.700	10	.662	.705
30-49	.744	.762	30	.671	.711
			50	.545	.621
Scheduled Caste					
0-9	.621	.559	0	.648	.644
10-29	.710	.734	10	.657	.677
30-49	.657	.657	30	.602	.612
			50	.494	.526

Part B. 1961-74

Closed Cohorts			Open-Ended Cohorts		
Age Group in 1961	Males	Females	Age Boundary in 1961	Males	Females
Muslims					
0-9	.718	.660	0	.917	.830
10-19	1.053	1.232	10	1.031	.938
20-39	1.002	.919	20	1.023	.831
			40	1.051	.686
Caste Hindus					
0-9	.696	.583	0	.712	.665
10-19	.745	.829	10	.720	.708
20-39	.855	.794	20	.711	.664
			40	.557	.512
Scheduled Caste					
0-9	.518	.454	0	.580	.565
10-19	.690	.828	10	.611	.626
20-39	.682	.634	20	.585	.561
			40	.465	.459

TABLE 8 Model Life Table Mortality Levels Implied by Intercensal Cohort Survivorship Probabilities for 1951-61 and 1961-74: Bangladesh

Part A. 1951-61

Closed Cohorts			Open-Ended Cohorts[a]		
	Coale-Demeny "North" Mortality Level			Coale-Demeny "North" Mortality Level	
Age Group in 1951	Males	Females	Age Boundary in 1951	Males	Females
Muslims					
0-9	1.4	<1	0	4.4	2.3
10-29	5.9	6.6	10	7.5	7.4
30-49	6.0	3.8	30	9.9	7.3
			50	18.6	14.3
Caste Hindus					
0-9	2.3	<1	0	<1	<1
10-29	<1	<1	10	<1	<1
30-49	2.4	1.4	30	2.7	3.8
			50	8.5	12.5
Scheduled Caste					
0-9	<1	<1	0	<1	<1
10-29	<1	<1	10	<1	<1
30-49	<1	<1	30	<1	<1
			50	5.1	5.1

levels for both groups of Hindus are unacceptably low and can be explained only by selective underenumeration of Hindus in 1961 or substantial emigration of Hindus between 1951 and 1961. If the cohorts distorted by age misreporting are excluded, the survivorship ratios for the Muslim population suggest a mortality level of around 6 or 7. Such a mortality level is possible for the period and, because survivorship ratios are highly sensitive to changes in enumeration completeness, suggests that the completeness of enumeration in 1951 may have been similar to that in 1961. The deficit of Hindus can more plausibly be accounted for by net emigration, presumably to India, than by differential changes in completeness of enumeration by religion between 1951 and 1961.

TABLE 8 (continued)

Part B. 1961-74

Closed Cohorts			Open-Ended Cohorts[a]		
Age Group in 1961	Coale-Demeny "North" Mortality Level		Age Boundary in 1961	Coale-Demeny "North" Mortality Level	
	Males	Females		Males	Females
Muslims					
0-9	1.8	<1	0	22.6	8.8
10-19	*	*	10	*	>24
20-39	*	14.5	20	*	16.6
			40	*	15.4
Caste Hindus					
0-9	<1	<1	0	1.4	<1
10-19	<1	1.8	10	1.8	<1
20-39	9.6	3.7	20	5.3	<1
			40	6.7	1.5
Scheduled Caste					
0-9	<1	<1	0	<1	<1
10-19	<1	1.7	10	<1	<1
20-39	<1	<1	20	<1	<1
			40	1.5	<1

*Indicates a survivorship probability in excess of 1.0.

[a] Mortality estimates obtained from survivorship of open-ended cohorts are sensitive to the age structure of the population. The calculations given here were made assuming a stable population age structure with a growth rate of 2 percent between 1951 and 1961 and 2.5 percent between 1961 and 1974. The use of a higher growth rate produces higher mortality estimates (lower levels), an increase of 0.5 percent reducing the estimates by between one and two levels.

The results for the period 1961-74 are more puzzling. There is still a clear deficit of Hindus in 1974 relative to 1961, as is indicated by the very low survivorship ratios and implied mortality levels over the period, suggesting a continuation of the steady emigration apparently established for the period 1951-61. It is also clear that the cohort aged 0-9 in 1961 was either too large in 1961, perhaps because of age reporting errors associated with the occupation questions used in the 1961 census, or too small in 1974. For other cohorts, however, there are too many Muslims in 1974 compared to 1961, giving rise to survivorship ratios greater than 1.0 for several cohorts; the number of males is particularly excessive. The figures suggest that enumeration was more complete in 1974, particularly for males, or that there was some net immigration of Muslims between 1961 and 1974. Such a change in enumeration completeness would imply that the observed intercensal growth rate of the Muslim population was higher than the rate of natural increase.

It might be hoped that birthplace data from the censuses of the Indian subcontinent would help to quantify migration movements, but such data are in fact difficult to use because of the huge size of the population movements that took place at the time of partition, the subsequent independence of Bangladesh (not previously tabulated as a country of birth in Indian statistics), and the lack of information on date of migration contained in birthplace data. However, the data do offer some clues. For instance, the number of people born in India but enumerated in Bangladesh fell from 849,000 in 1951 to 628,000 in 1961, a slightly faster drop than would be expected on the basis of mortality alone, possibly suggesting a slight return migration over the period. Between 1961 and 1974, on the other hand, the Indian-born population in Bangladesh increased from 628,000 to 737,000, indicating an immigration, presumably of Muslims, of over 200,000 people.

Such migratory flows cannot, however, explain the survivorship ratios in Table 7. Over 2 million more Muslim males would be required in 1961 to make the 1961-74 male survivorship ratios plausible, and the addition of such a large number of people would reduce the intercensal growth rate from 3.05 to 2.4 percent. For the female Muslim population, on the other hand, no extra people are required in 1961 to make the survivorship ratios plausible, only a redistribution of females by age in 1974.

There does not seem to be any consistent explanation of the evolution of the Muslim population from 1961 to 1974, since age reporting errors--and particularly changes in the pattern of such errors--are obscuring what is actually going on. Only two things can be concluded with any confidence, the first being that the Hindu population, and in particular the Scheduled Caste, lost members at a faster rate than mortality can explain both between 1951 and 1961 and between 1961 and 1974, the most probable explanation being net emigration to India; and second, that there is no conclusive evidence of differences in enumeration completeness among the three censuses of 1951, 1961, and 1974, although there is evidence of strange changes in age reporting.

SUMMARY

The population growth rates for what is now Bangladesh--indicated by the censuses of 1951, 1961, and 1974--are lower than would be expected given available estimates of the rate of natural increase over the period. Some part of the low growth rate of the whole population is explained by a sustained emigration of Hindus throughout the period, and growth rates for the Muslim population alone are closer to the estimated rates of natural increase. Although age data are of poor quality, the census age distributions for Muslims show a young, rapidly growing population (nearly 50 percent under age 15 in 1974), and stable population analysis of the 1961 and 1974 age distributions suggest a birth rate probably in the range of 44 to 48 per thousand. Analysis of intercensal survival by religion and broad age groups confirms a probable emigration of Hindus, but gives apparently inconsistent results for Muslims, of whom there seems to be a deficit in 1961 relative to 1951 and a surplus in 1974 relative to 1961. The natural explanation of this finding, a relatively more serious underenumeration in 1961 than in 1951 or 1974, would increase the growth rate of the Muslim population for the period 1951-61 and reduce it for the period 1961-74, making the population growth rate for the second period less consistent with available estimates of natural increase; an explanation in terms of net migration suffers from the same problem. The interpretation of data on the size and age distribution of the population thus remains uncertain; complex changes in enumeration completeness, age misreporting, and net migration make it impossible to draw firm conclusions about the evolution of the total population.

2 Fertility

THE POPULATION GROWTH ESTIMATION (PGE) EXPERIMENT

The main features of the PGE, described in detail in the final report (PIDE, 1971), have already been outlined in the section on data sources. The experiment was conducted as a dual-record survey, with information on births being collected independently by registrars and periodic retrospective surveys, over the period 1962-65. Fertility measures can be computed from the longitudinal registration data (LR), from the retrospective survey data (CS), or from a combination of both. The measures based on a combination of data from both the LR and the CS sources, referred to here as CD estimates, are obtained by matching the events recorded by the two systems in order to identify the events recorded by both systems, those recorded only by the LR system, and those recorded only by the CS system. A final estimate of total events is then obtained by summing these three categories plus a fourth category of events recorded by neither system and estimated by the Chandrasekaran-Deming (1949) formula assuming that the probability of an event being missed by one system is independent of its probability of omission by the other system. The crude birth rate and age-specific fertility rates can also be computed for different segments of the time period covered by the survey. Table 9 shows the CD and LR estimates of crude birth rates and age-specific fertility rates for the period 1963-65.

TABLE 9 Fertility Estimates from the PGE 1963-65: Bangladesh

Age Group	Age-Specific Fertility Rates 1963-65[a] Registration Data (LR)	Age-Specific Fertility Rates 1963-65[a] Adjusted Data (CD)	Adjusted (CD) Age-Specific Fertility Rates[b] 1964	Adjusted (CD) Age-Specific Fertility Rates[b] 1965
15-19	.230	.276	.277	.273
20-24	.303	.359	.356	.346
25-29	.313	.356	.345	.344
30-34	.221	.260	.221	.251
35-39	.129	.150	.160	.124
40-44	.048	.056	.061	.050
45-49	.013	.022	.014	.024
Total Fertility	6.29	7.40	7.17	7.05
Crude Birth Rate	44[c]	53[c]	50	49

[a] As reported in the final report (PIDE, 1971).
[b] As calculated from detailed tables published in the final report.
[c] For the complete survey period 1962-65.

Also shown in Table 9 are age-specific fertility rates calculated for 1964 and 1965 on the basis of adjusted (CD) births and de facto midyear population. The 1963-65 CD rates show very high fertility, a birth rate of 53 and total fertility rate of 7.4, whereas the rates for 1964 and 1965 are somewhat lower. In 1962, the first year of the PGE, no information on age of mother was collected; in 1963, such information was collected, but the level of non-response was high; it was only in 1964 and 1965 that age of mother was collected for a high proportion of all recorded births. It may be that the collection of the extra detail improved the quality of the data collected, although the proportion of all CD events recorded by the registration system fell in both 1964 and 1965; the proportion of all CD events covered by the retrospective survey rose in 1964 and fell sharply in 1965. The Indo-Pakistani war in 1965 may have had adverse effects on the results for that year, although its immediate impact in Bangladesh was small.

Dual-record surveys like the PGE are sensitive to the accuracy of the matching operation. A false match means that what are in fact two separate events are counted as only one, whereas a false non-match has the opposite effect: one event is inflated to count as two. Such errors will also have small additional effects since the size of the CD correction for unreported events is determined by the relative sizes of the categories of matched and unmatched events. Thus, overly strict matching criteria, exaggerating the number of non-matches, will lead to an overestimation of the true number of events, whereas overly lax matching, exaggerating the number of matches, will lead to underestimates. A number of empirical studies have shown the seriousness of this problem (Brass, 1971a; Alam and Yusuf, 1970). The PGE did not collect parity data for all women, so there is no internal yardstick with which to measure the results obtained, but it is generally thought that in East Pakistan the number of false non-matches exceeded that of false matches (Yusuf, 1968), in which case the CD birth rate of 53 should be regarded as a maximum.

Parity information was, however, collected for an area of central Bangladesh by the Demographic Survey of East Pakistan (DSEP) in 1961-62 (Muniruzzaman, 1965, 1966a, 1966b; Obaidullah, 1966). Parity data from the 1974 census indicate that the fertility of the sampled area was approximately representative of that of the country as a whole, so the PGE fertility rates can be compared with the lifetime fertility information available from the DSEP.

Given the data available on current and lifetime fertility, it is possible to apply the P/F ratio method (Brass, 1964) to examine the consistency of the two types of data. First, age-specific fertility rates (f) obtained from information on recent fertility--in this case from the PGE--are cumulated, in order to obtain measures equivalent to the lifetime fertility that would be experienced by women at the upper limits of the age groups to which cumulation has proceeded given the age-specific fertility rates being used. Lifetime fertility measures for age groups of women (F), equivalent to data on average parity by age group, are then obtained by interpolating between the values for exact ages. These parity equivalents obtained from the current fertility data can then be compared with reported parities (P)--in this case available from the DSEP.

The P/F method is often used not only as a consistency check but also as a correction procedure. In order to use the method for correction, it must be assumed that fertility has not been changing, that the errors characterizing data on children ever born do not seriously distort the average parities for women up to age 30 or 35 (because their childbearing is more recent, younger women may be expected to give more accurate accounts of children ever borne), and that the errors characterizing data on recent fertility do not seriously distort the age pattern of fertility. Under these assumptions, the age pattern of recent fertility can be scaled by the level of lifetime fertility for the younger women to estimate an improved age-specific fertility schedule.

The application of the method is shown in Table 10. Leaving aside the P/F ratio for the 15-19 age group, which is generally unreliable, the ratios start close to 1.0 and decline thereafter. For older age groups (40 and over) this decline probably indicates an increasing level of omission in women's reports of children ever borne. For the younger women, however, such an explanation is not very plausible, given that the average parities for

TABLE 10 Comparison of Current Fertility from the PGE (1963-65) with Retrospective Fertility from the DSEP (1961-62): Bangladesh

Age Group	CD Adjusted Age-Specific Fertility from PGE f	Reported Average Parity from DSEP[a] P	Cumulated Fertility Parity Equivalent F	P/F	Adjusted Age-Specific Fertility f[b]
15-19	.276	0.58	0.655	0.885	.263
20-24	.359	2.31	2.279	1.014	.342
25-29	.356	3.87	4.105	0.943	.339
30-34	.260	5.10	5.651	0.903	.248
35-39	.150	5.84	6.669	0.876	.143
40-44	.056	6.09	7.159	0.851	.053
45-49	.022	6.24	7.354	0.848	.021
Total Fertility	7.395				7.050

[a] From Schultz and DaVanzo (1970).

[b] Using a correction factor of 0.953, the average P/F ratio for women aged 20-34.

women under 35 are higher than those reported by any other source except the Bangladesh Fertility Survey. An alternative explanation of the level of the ratios for women aged 20 to 35 is that the CD fertility estimates for the period 1963-65 are somewhat too high. Adjusting the age-specific rates by the average of the P/F ratios for women in the age range 20 to 34, 0.953, gives an estimate of total fertility of 7.05, more in line with the levels obtained by the PGE for 1964 and 1965, the years for which the classification of births by mother's age was most complete.

Another criticism leveled at the PGE estimates is that while the CD adjustment process takes into consideration the omission of events used in the numerators of rates, no correction is made for the omission of population from the denominators (Shaw, 1970; Afzal, 1977). Such omission would tend to inflate the vital rates obtained from the survey, though no internal basis exists for estimating the likely magnitude of the error. One indication that the error may not be large is provided by the P/F ratio consistency check just described; such a check should allow for denominator error, since fertility rates are affected by underenumeration but average parities are not, or at least not to the same extent. The P/F ratio comparison does suggest that the CD fertility rates are slightly too high, but not by anything like the order of magnitude suggested by Afzal (1977).

THE NATIONAL IMPACT SURVEY (NIS)

The NIS was conducted in 1968-69 to investigate the impact of the national family-planning program. It is a frustrating data source for two reasons, the first being that detailed information was collected from ever-married women under age 55 only, without providing even an age distribution for the rest of the population, and the second being that the only published results are those for currently married women (Sirageldin et al., 1975). The estimates of marital fertility for three three-year periods prior to the survey show a marked fertility decline over the period, as shown in Table 11.

Table 11 also compares the average number of children ever born per currently married woman obtained from the NIS in 1968-69 and from the BFS in 1975-76. The agreement of the two distributions up to age 30 is

TABLE 11 Fertility Measures for Currently Married Women, from the National Impact Survey and BFS: Bangladesh

Age Group	Fertility Rates Based on NIS Data			Average Number of Children Ever Born	
	1960-62	1963-65	1966-68	NIS	BFS
10-14	.112	.107	.113	n.a.	.08
15-19	.335	.312	.297	.94	.87
20-24	.347	.353	.314	2.53	2.49
25-29	.348	.324	.260	4.26	4.33
30-34	.288	.262	.208	5.60	5.86
35-39	.180	.159	.142	6.40	6.90
40-44	.116	.080	.046	6.57	7.58
45-49	n.a.	n.a.	.005	6.55	7.26
Total Marital Fertility	8.66[a]	8.01[a]	6.93		

Note: n.a. means not available.

[a] Calculated by assuming that the 1966-68 rate for women 45-49 applied in earlier periods.

Sources: Sirageldin et al. (1975) and Bangladesh (1978).

impressive, suggesting that the fertility of young women in the 10 to 15 years prior to 1975-76 was very similar to that for a similar period prior to 1968-69, a conclusion inconsistent with the marital fertility decline shown by the NIS data for the period 1960-68. For currently married women over age 30, the BFS shows systematically and substantially higher average numbers of children ever born than does the NIS, suggesting that the number of children ever born was underreported by older women interviewed in the NIS. Sirageldin et al. (1975) also note that such omission may have taken place, on the grounds that the infant mortality rates obtained from the NIS are lower than would be expected on the basis of other information. Although the tabulations available from the NIS do not permit a convincing demonstration, it must also be regarded as very probable that the sharp downward trend in marital fertility shown by the NIS data is largely the result of dating errors in the reporting of births in the pregnancy history. This type of error has been shown to be common in data collected by fertility history surveys (Potter, 1977; Brass and Rashad, 1981).

THE BANGLADESH RETROSPECTIVE SURVEY OF FERTILITY AND MORTALITY (BRSFM)

The BRSFM collected two complementary types of information on fertility: lifetime fertility (by sex of child) and recent fertility. Table 12 shows the number of women in each age group, the number of male and female children they report ever having borne, the implied sex ratios at birth, and the number of births reported as having occurred in the 12-month period before the survey. For women aged 15 to 34, the sex ratios of children ever born are reasonable, 105 or 106 males per 100 females. Above that age, the sex ratios increase somewhat, suggesting the possible omission of female children from reports of children ever born or, alternatively, a tendency to report female children as male. Up to age 35, however, the sex ratios give no indication of errors in the data.

The availability from the BRSFM of data on lifetime and recent fertility makes it possible to apply the P/F ratio comparison of recent and lifetime fertility. The results are shown in Table 13. The average parities used were calculated using an estimate of the true level of non-response among ever-married women obtained by

TABLE 12 Children Ever Born by Sex, and Births in Year Before Survey by Age Group of Woman, from BRSFM 1974: Bangladesh

Age Group	Number of Women (thousands)	Children Ever Born (thousands)		Sex Ratio of Children Ever Born (males/female)	Births in 12 Months Before Survey (thousands)
		Male	Female		
10-14	4,675	4	3	1.33	7
15-19	3,015	597	564	1.06	320
20-24	2,653	2,507	2,394	1.05	609
25-29	2,607	4,676	4,410	1.06	561
30-34	2,016	5,109	4,801	1.06	368
35-39	1,772	5,436	4,948	1.10	237
40-44	1,480	4,884	4,281	1.14	95
45-49	1,135	3,715	3,191	1.16	38

TABLE 13 Comparison of Current and Retrospective Fertility Information, from BRSFM 1974: Bangladesh

Age Group	Reported Age-Specific Fertility f^a	Reported Average Parity p^b	Cumulated Fertility Parity Equivalents F	P/F	Adjusted Age-Specific Fertility f^c
15-19	.109[d]	0.385	0.278	1.387	.229
20-24	.230	1.850	1.237	1.496	.337
25-29	.215	3.490	2.348	1.486	.310
30-34	.183	4.922	3.333	1.477	.256
35-39	.134	5.867	4.107	1.429	.178
40-44	.064	6.200	4.552	1.362	.086
45-49	.034	6.092	4.781	1.274	.041
Total Fertility Rate	4.84				7.19

[a] The reported rates refer to age groups half a year younger than shown, because they were calculated from births in a 12-month period by age of mother at the end of the period.

[b] Calculated after allowing for non-response as estimated by the El-Badry method.

[c] Adjusted by factor of 1.486, average P/F ratio for women aged 20-34; also adjusted to refer to true age groups.

[d] Includes some births reported by women under age 15.

applying El-Badry's correction (1961). This correction allows for the practice of misallocating women of zero parity to the category of not-stated parity. The true level of non-response was estimated as 0.1 percent of ever-married women.

The P/F ratios in Table 13 are all substantially higher than 1.0, indicating that current fertility, as reported, is lower than lifetime fertility, as reported. The ratio for the age group 15-19 is often unreliable, because the interpolation procedure used to convert cumulated fertility into parity equivalents is too simplified to allow for the rapid increase in fertility among this group of women, and conclusions should not be drawn from it. The ratios for women between 20 and 35 are very consistent, averaging 1.486. This average ratio is substantially higher than those normally encountered in applications of this method. For women 35 and older the ratios decline steadily with age group.

The high values of the ratios for women aged 20 to 34 could be explained if fertility in the year before the survey were lower than the average level of fertility experienced during the women's lifetimes or if the number of births reported as having occurred in the year before the survey were lower than the actual number. There are three possible reasons why fertility in the year before the survey might actually have been lower than lifetime fertility: marital fertility might have been declining; age at marriage might have been rising; or a cataclysmic event, such as a war or a famine, might have lowered fertility that year.

If fertility in the year before the survey was lower than lifetime fertility because of a general trend of declining fertility within marriage, the P/F ratios would be expected to rise with age, since the decline would have had a greater proportional impact on the lifetime fertility of the younger women than on that of the older women. If age at marriage were rising, but fertility within marriage was remaining unchanged, the ratios would decline with age, though such a decline would be smallest in age groups in which almost all the women were already ever married, that is, above age 25. The fact that the observed ratios show neither of these patterns suggests that the level of the ratios cannot be accounted for by a continuing fertility decline. The level of the ratios could still be accounted for if fertility had been one third lower than normal in the year before the survey; however, 1973 was not a period of exceptional disaster, so there seems no reason why fertility would have been a third below normal in that year.

The most likely explanation for the observed ratios therefore seems to be that births in the year before the survey were underreported. A detailed analysis of the data suggests that several factors contributed to this underrecording, including failure to answer the question on date of most recent birth and a tendency to report births as having occurred longer ago than was actually the case.

The tendency for the ratios to fall off after age 35 suggests that the reporting of parity became progressively less complete for older women. In the circumstances, it seems reasonable to use an average of the P/F ratios for women aged 20 to 34 as a correction factor for the current fertility distribution, giving the adjusted age-specific fertility rates shown in the last column of Table 13. These adjusted rates imply a total fertility rate of 7.19 and a crude birth rate of 47.1 per thousand.

An alternative procedure for adjusting age-specific fertility rates was used in a report on the BRSFM (Blacker, 1977). A Coale-Trussell (1974) fertility model was fitted to the reported age-specific fertility distribution for women under age 35, and the model was then scaled by cumulation and comparison with the reported average parities for younger women. The fitted and scaled model was then accepted as the age-specific fertility distribution. In effect, the procedure smoothes out irregularities in the fertility distribution but makes little difference to estimates of aggregate fertility; for reasons of simplicity, we have preferred to use and adjust the reported fertility distribution.

The BRSFM also tabulated the number of women by age group and parity, as well as the number of women who reported a birth in the year before the survey by age group and parity, making it possible to compare cumulated current first-birth fertility rates with lifetime proportions of women with at least one child. In effect, such a comparison is the calculation of P/F ratios for first births only and provides an additional insight into the consistency or inconsistency of the data being used. Table 14 shows the application of the method. The proportion of women with at least one child (P_1) was calculated after excluding the number of women estimated by the El-Badry technique as having provided no information about their parity.

All the P_1/F_1 ratios in Table 14 except that for the 15-19 group (which is even more unreliable in the case of first births than in the case of all births) are substantially greater than one, indicating that the number of first births recorded in the year before the survey was lower than would be expected on the basis of the reported proportions of women in each age group with at least one child, thus qualitatively confirming the earlier analysis in Table 13 of all births. Quantitatively, however, the agreement is not so good. All the first-birth ratios are lower than the corresponding all-birth ratios, in some cases by more than 10 percent, and although they are almost constant above age 30, they are anything but consistent before that age.

Another data problem is revealed by the fact that when the P_1/F_1 ratio for the 20-24 age group is applied to the final proportion of women who become mothers as

TABLE 14 Comparison of Current and Retrospective Information on First Births, from BRSFM 1974: Bangladesh

Age Group	Reported Age-Specific First-Birth Rates f_1	Reported Proportion of Women with At Least One Child[a] P_1	Cumulated and Interpolated First-Birth Rates F_1	P_1/F_1	Adjusted Proportion of Women Becoming Mothers by Age 50[b]
15-19	.0756	.117	.234	0.501	0.380
20-24	.0577	.789	.568	1.388	1.052
25-29	.0142	.927	.713	1.300	0.985
30-34	.0030	.956	.747	1.279	0.969
35-39	.0011	.969	.756	1.281	0.971
40-44	--	.963	.758	1.270	0.963
45-49	--	.962	.758	1.269	0.962

[a] Calculated after allowing for non-response as estimated by the El-Badry method (El-Badry, 1961).

[b] Each adjusted by the P_1/F_1 ratio for the age group.

implied by the current first-birth rates, the adjusted final proportion becomes greater than one, as shown in the last column of Table 14. Clearly, age-specific first-birth rates implying that more than 100 percent of women will ultimately become mothers cannot long be sustained, and the use of the P_1/F_1 ratio from age group 20-24 as a correction factor is unacceptable. A high P_1/F_1 ratio for the 20-24 age group is consistent with a recent shift toward later age at marriage; indeed, the first-birth ratios above age 20 do exhibit the pattern to be expected from such a shift, even though the all-birth ratios do not. The average of the ratios for women aged 30-49, 1.27, implies that 96 percent of women would ultimately become mothers, but if such an adjustment were applied to the all-birth fertility rates, the implied total fertility rate would be only 6.15, lower than the average parity reported by women aged 40-44. An analysis of all births in the year before the survey by birth order suggests that first births were overrecorded relative to higher order births, implying that the comparison of first-birth rates with proportions of mothers should not be used to provide an adjustment factor for all births.

THE BANGLADESH FERTILITY SURVEY (BFS)

The Bangladesh Fertility Survey, conducted in 1975 under the auspices of the World Fertility Survey, collected detailed pregnancy histories from a small but carefully designed sample of ever-married women; a household schedule also collected data on age, sex, and marital status from the entire population of the sample areas. Age-specific fertility rates for 1975 computed from the births recorded by the pregnancy histories are shown in Table 15, which also shows the average parities for ever-married women by age group derived from the BFS and other sources.

The age-specific fertility rates computed for 1975 are substantially lower than the adjusted rates obtained from the BRSFM for 1973-74, giving a total fertility rate of 5.4 as opposed to 7.2. As Ahmad (1980) has shown, however, the BFS estimates of fertility in 1975 depend on the method of allocation to calendar month and year of those births recorded in terms of "years ago." Depending on the method of allocation used, the number of births occurring in the year before the survey can range from 1,008 to 1,535. The total fertility rate of 5.4 for 1975 is based on the assumption that for those births reported in terms of years ago, what was reported was not completed years ago, but rather the nearest number of completed years ago, the actual period ago thus being rounded to the nearest number of complete years.

The age patterns of fertility obtained by the BFS and the BRSFM are also different, that from the BFS having a younger pattern than that coming from the BRSFM; the respective mean ages of childbearing being 26.8 years from the BFS as opposed to 28.3 years from the BRSFM. The average parities from the BFS are higher at every age than those obtained by other surveys, suggesting more complete reporting of children ever born, though Zaba and Blacker (1980) have suggested that the change may have resulted from better age reporting in the BFS. The sex ratios of children ever born are very consistent age group by age group and very close to the generally expected value of 105 males per 100 females. It seems, therefore, that reporting of children ever born was of high quality, except perhaps among women aged 45-49, whose average parity is lower than that of women aged 40-44.

A detailed pregnancy history survey should in theory provide the basis for studying fertility trends in the 10

TABLE 15 Recent Fertility Estimates from BFS, and Average Parities by Age of Mother from BFS and Other Sources: Bangladesh

Age Group	Age-Specific Fertility Rates 1975[a]	Children Ever Born Per Ever-Married Women					Sex Ratio of Children Ever Born
		BFS 1975	DSEP 1961-62	Census 1961	Census 1974	BRSFM 1974[b]	BFS (males/female)
10-14	.006						
15-19	.171	0.85	0.63	0.77	0.67	0.57	0.913
20-24	.282	2.45	2.34	2.24	1.91	1.94	1.051
25-29	.254	4.24	3.89	3.51	3.29	3.53	1.063
30-34	.187	5.71	5.12	4.64	4.59	4.95	1.046
35-39	.113	6.71	5.85	5.24	5.52	5.88	1.064
40-44	.056	7.10	6.10	5.49	5.78	6.22	1.036
45-49	.006	6.73	6.25	5.74	5.95	6.12	1.063
Total Fertility Rate	5.38						

[a] From Brass and Rashad (1981) based on BFS data; rates are for women by age group at the end of 1975.
[b] Not adjusted for possible non-response.

or 15 years before the survey. However, the interpretation of the fertility history data from the BFS is made difficult by two features of the data. The first problem has already been mentioned and concerns the reporting of dates of births in the pregnancy histories. Dates were supposed to be reported in terms of month and year of occurrence, but when month and year were not known, the answer was to be recorded in terms of "time ago"--that is, the length of time before the survey that the birth occurred, in units of completed years. Of births occurring in the period 1971-75, the date was recorded for 2,239 and the time ago was reported for 3,670. It has been suggested that time ago may have been rounded to the nearest year, instead of being reported in completed-year form, or may have been systematically rounded up to the next higher number of years (Ahmad, 1980). If it is assumed that the recording was in the form of completed years, the fertility rates for the years before the survey show a very rapid decline taking place, the birth rate declining from around 53 per thousand 5 to 9 years before the survey to around 38 per thousand 0 to 4 years before the survey. If, on the other hand, it is assumed that time ago was always rounded up--an assumption that cannot be fully accepted because some births were recorded as having occurred zero years before the survey--the birth rate falls less drastically, from 54 per thousand 5 to 9 years before the survey to 46 per thousand 0 to 4 years before the survey.

The second problem also concerns the dating of births. It has been suggested (Potter, 1977; Brass, 1977) that in many cases the dates of births recorded by pregnancy histories are distorted in systematic ways that give rise to biases in the estimates of fertility levels and the trends derived from them. Given the way fertility histories have traditionally been collected, a common form of the bias seems to be the pushing back of recent events into the past, causing a deficit of recent births and a surplus of births in the period 5 to 15 years before the survey. It is difficult to pin down this sort of error by the application of internal consistency checks, because the fertility histories themselves will be internally consistent or will have been edited into consistency. Any assessment of consistency, therefore, has to be made in terms either of internal plausibility or of consistency with estimates from other sources.

Brass and Rashad (1981) have used repeated applications of the P/F ratio comparison of period and lifetime fertility for different periods to show the implausibility of the BFS fertility information as recorded. They show that whereas current fertility in the period 1971-75 was substantially below the levels of lifetime fertility, current fertility in the period 1966-70 was substantially above such levels. The age-specific fertility rates and P/F ratios obtained for the two periods are shown in Table 16. It is possible that fertility rose sharply to the extremely high levels indicated for the late 1960s, and then fell even more sharply, but such a conclusion would be inconsistent with other available estimates. The misplacing of births in time apparently indicated by Brass and Rashad's analysis could result largely from the mislocation of births for

TABLE 16 Age-Specific Fertility Rates for 1966-70 and 1971-75, and P/F Ratios for All and First Births, from BFS: Bangladesh

Age Group at End of Period	Age-Specific Fertility Rates[a]		Comparison of Period and Lifetime Fertility (P/F)			
			1966-70		1971-75	
	1966-70	1971-75	First Births	All Births	First Births[b]	All Births
10-14	.0080	.0016				
15-19	.1689	.1090	0.78	1.02	1.07	1.06
20-24	.3601	.2886	0.97	1.01	1.21	1.17
25-29	.3601	.2911	1.02	0.99	1.27	1.21
30-34	.3317	.2502	1.03	0.93	1.28	1.21
35-39	.2408	.1848	1.02	0.90	1.27	1.18
40-44	.1462	.1074	0.98	0.78	1.23	1.16
45-49	(.0347)[c]	.0347	--	--	1.11	1.02
Total Fertility Rate	8.25	6.34				

[a] Calculated assuming that births for which no date of occurrence was recorded were reported in terms of nearest number of years ago.

[b] Numerator is the proportion of women with at least one child at the end of 1975.

[c] Survey provides no information about this cell, so the 1971-75 value was adopted as a conservative estimate.

Source: Brass and Rashad (1981).

which month and year of occurrence were not recorded, and more consistent sequences of numbers of births by year could be constructed by assuming that births reported in terms of time ago were rounded up to the next higher number of years.

If the P/F ratios for the period 1971-75 in Table 16 were taken to imply a correction factor of around 1.2, the adjusted total fertility rate would be 7.6, an unacceptably high figure. A possible explanation for the ratios being too high is that rising age at marriage has reduced current fertility in the age group 15-19. P/F ratios calculated by duration of marriage are little distorted by changing age at marriage; Goldman and Chidambaram (1980) have calculated such ratios, the average adjustment being around 1.1, implying total fertility around 7.0. Such ratios by duration of marriage are sensitive to errors in reporting date of marriage, however.

Brass and Rashad (1981) also attempt to adjust the reported fertility for cohorts by the use of the relational Gompertz fertility model. Their conclusion is that fertility may have declined marginally, by some 5 percent, but that such a decline occurred among young women, possibly as a result of a rising age at marriage. However, even this conclusion is tentative, since the use of the model is least satisfactory for the youngest age groups, in which women have completed a relatively small proportion of their lifetime fertility, and since the age pattern of the average parities may be distorted both by age misreporting and, for dates before the survey, by dating errors. Thus, whether for reason of doubts about the time allocation of births reported as occurring a given number of years ago, or for reason of suspicion that accordion-like distortions have affected the time scale on which births are reported, the information on fertility trends available from the BFS seems to be of uncertain validity.

An alternative to looking at internal consistency is to compare the fertility estimates obtained from the BFS with those available from other sources. The PGE estimated total fertility in 1964 and 1965 to be around 7.1, showing no evidence of the very high fertility (8.25) reported by the BFS for the period 1966-70. The NIS estimated total fertility for the period 1966-68 at 6.0, an estimate that must itself be regarded as highly dubious. The BRSFM gives an estimate of total fertility, after adjustment, of 7.2 for 1973-74. The external evidence concerning fertility levels can be seen to be inconsistent, but gives no indication whatever of the very high fertility levels computed from the BFS data for the period 1966-70 or of the very rapid decline indicated for 1970 onward.

The fertility trends apparently indicated by the BFS need to be interpreted with caution, since there is strong evidence that the trends are largely figments of errors in the dating of births. The overall fertility level indicated by the data also needs to be critically examined. At face value the BFS data imply a very high level of fertility; women aged 40-44 report an average of 7.1 children each, suggesting an average of 7.4 or more children by the end of childbearing. When reporting of births nears completeness, there is a need to consider the factors that might lead to an excessive average number of children being reported per woman. The four most likely factors are a systematic tendency to overreport the number of children ever borne, a tendency for childless women to conceal the fact by inventing children, a tendency to select women with large numbers of children for interview, and a tendency for women with above-average numbers of children to survive to the time of the survey while their less fertile peers do not.

The first factor, overreporting, is always a possibility, though in the case of the BFS the internal consistency of the parity data, in terms of sex ratio and proportions surviving, suggests that it was not important. The second factor, "invention" of nonexistent children to conceal childlessness, probably did affect the BFS results, since only 2.7 percent of ever-married women aged 45-49 reported themselves as childless, an implausibly low percentage. However, the effect of this error on total fertility might not be large; if the true incidence of childlessness were 5 percent and the women who incorrectly reported children reported an average of two each, the effect on total fertility would be less than 0.05. The third factor, selection of high-parity women, should not have affected the BFS, since all ever-married women in each household were to be questioned, leaving the interviewer no selection to make. In the case of the fourth factor, selective mortality, even the direction of the effect is not well established, so it seems unlikely that the absolute effect would be large. There are thus some reasons for supposing that fertility was overreported by the BFS, though the overall impact was probably minor.

THE CHOLERA RESEARCH LABORATORY (CRL)

In 1963, the Cholera Research Laboratory (CRL) started a research project in Matlab thana of Comilla district, a rural area of southern Bangladesh. In 1966, a study area was defined, its population was enumerated, and the registration of demographic events--births, deaths, marriages, and migrational movements--was begun. In 1968, the study area was almost doubled to include over 200,000 people, and the Demographic Surveillance System (DSS) has continued in the expanded area since then, with periodic censuses and the continuous registration of demographic events. The CRL has not only placed great emphasis on the complete registration of all events, making the DSS a source of high-quality demographic data, but has also provided health services to the area's population. The DSS and its results are well described in the series of scientific reports published by the CRL (1978). In 1976, registration of vital events was started for a population of 40,000 in another study area, the Teknaf thana of Chittagong district.

Matlab thana is fairly typical of rural southern Bangladesh in most respects, but no one area can be taken as being representative of a whole country; nevertheless, any pronounced national trends may be expected to be observed in the DSS data. Chowdhury and Sheikh (1980) have calculated fertility measures from the DSS data for the period 1966-77; crude birth rates and total fertility rates are shown in Table 17.

All the birth rates, with one exception, fall between 41.8 and 47.1, and the total fertility rates are all, again with one exception, between 5.5 and 6.7. The exception in both cases is 1975, which appears to have been a year of very low fertility in Matlab; 1974 was a year of famine, which may explain the low fertility in 1975. In general, the level of fertility in Matlab appears to be rather low relative to the national estimates already presented; the Matlab birth rate averages around 45, the total fertility rate around 6.2. Information on regional variations in fertility (see Chapter 5) show Comilla district to have lower fertility than average, though not as much lower as would be expected on the basis of the difference between estimates for Matlab and those for Bangladesh as a whole. In terms of age-standardized average parity as recorded by the 1974 census, Comilla district had lower fertility than the national average, ranking sixteenth out of the 19

TABLE 17 Crude Birth Rates and Total Fertility Rates, 1966-77: Matlab Thana, Bangladesh

Year	Crude Birth Rate	Total Fertility Rate
1966-67	47.1	6.7
1967-68	45.4	6.3
1968-69	46.6	6.3
1969-70	45.3	6.1
1970-71	43.5	5.9
1971-72	44.5	6.0
1972-73	41.8	5.5
1973-74	45.6	not available
1974	42.9	6.5
1975	29.4	4.3
1976	43.3	6.2
1977	46.4	6.7

Source: Chowdhury and Sheikh (1980).

districts of Bangladesh, with an average parity of 3.72 as compared with the national average of 3.89 (Khan and Blacker, 1981).

Another feature of the fertility estimates for Matlab is that although they fluctuate there is no significant trend. Fertility was clearly very low in 1975, and it seems possible that fertility was relatively low in the years 1970-73, a period that includes the War of Liberation. The DSS data seem to suggest, therefore, that although fertility fluctuates substantially from year to year, no systematic decline in fertility had started by 1977.

Fertility estimates are available for the Teknaf DSS for 1976 and 1977 (Rahman et al., 1980). The birth rates obtained are 47.9 and 49.6 for 1976 and 1977, respectively, the total fertility rate for both years combined being 7.1. It thus appears that Teknaf has rather higher fertility than Matlab, the Teknaf levels being comparable with most national estimates.

SUMMARY

Fertility estimates for Bangladesh vary widely with the method of data collection and analysis used to obtain them. The PGE, a dual-record survey, gave an unadjusted estimate of total fertility based on registration of births of 6.3 for the period 1963-65; after adjustment for missed events, the estimate was 7.4. The births reported in the year before the 1974 BRSFM indicated a level of total fertility of 4.8; after adjustment for consistency with reported lifetime fertility, the estimated total fertility was 7.2, more consistent with the PGE results. Both pregnancy history surveys, the NIS and the BFS, indicated sharp declines in fertility over the 10 years before the survey, and both showed high levels of lifetime fertility, measured in terms of average parity. A third pregnancy history survey, the DSEP, carried out in the early 1960s in central Bangladesh, gave similar results. Data from the CRL's carefully controlled vital registration system in a small area of central southern Bangladesh give lower estimates of fertility, with total fertility averaging around 6.0 over the period 1966 to 1975, and indicate rather sharp annual fluctuations in the level of fertility.

There are obviously good reasons for doubting the validity of the sharp fertility declines indicated by the fertility history surveys, since the trends they show are mutually inconsistent. The lifetime fertility levels reported, however, suggest average levels of total fertility in the range of 7.0 to 7.5, though these levels may be somewhat higher than the true level as a result of overstatement of lifetime fertility. The adjusted fertility estimates from the PGE are obtained after the application of a rather substantial correction factor, which is sensitive to the accuracy of the matching operation; the CD estimates obtained from the PGE should therefore be regarded as upper limits of the true level of fertility. The adjusted fertility estimates from the BRSFM are obtained by the application of an even larger correction factor to the recorded age-specific fertility rates; so, although the final estimate of total fertility falls neatly within the broad range of values indicated by other surveys, the sensitivity of the final estimate to the exact value of the correction factor needs to be borne in mind when interpreting the results. The one data source that indicates substantially lower fertility, the Demographic Surveillance System in a part of Matlab thana, covers a relatively small area and cannot be taken as representative of the country as a whole. It is possible that all the methods based on children-ever-born data (the fertility history surveys and the BRSFM) may overestimate fertility slightly, if numbers of children ever born are distorted by the inclusion of stillbirths or the concealment of childlessness.

Our conclusion, therefore, is that because of data weaknesses it is impossible to be sure of the exact level of fertility in Bangladesh, although total fertility has probably averaged somewhere in the range of 6.8 to 7.3 over the 15 years or so prior to 1975. There is no firm evidence of any significant trend in fertility up to 1975, although rising age at marriage may be having some downward effect on fertility.

3 Marital Status

In the recent past, marriage has occurred early and has been virtually universal for females in Bangladesh; for males, marriage is also almost universal, but occurs on average somewhat later in life. Table 18 shows proportions ever married by age group and sex, together with the implied singulate mean age at first marriage (SMAM) for the censuses of 1951, 1961, and 1974. The SMAM, as calculated from proportions of those single in each age group recorded by a census, is neither a period nor a cohort measure and should be interpreted with caution.

For males, the figures show a rising age at first marriage throughout the period, with the SMAM increasing by half a year between 1951 and 1961 and by a year between 1961 and 1974. For females, age at marriage appears to have fallen between 1951 and 1961, the SMAM falling by half a year and the proportion of girls ever married in the 10-14 age group increasing from 0.26 to 0.33 in the same period. Between 1961 and 1974, however, female age at marriage rose sharply, the SMAM increasing by two whole years. It seems likely that female age at first marriage has been rising since 1951, but that some definitional or data-collection problem affected the information for 1961; deficiencies in age reporting in the 1961 census have already been noted in Chapter 1 in the section on population characteristics.

TABLE 18 Proportions Ever Married by Sex and Age Group in 1951, 1961, and 1974: Bangladesh

Age Group	Males			Females		
	1951	1961	1974	1951	1961	1974
10-14	.0207	.0223	.0068	.2631	.3261	.0952
15-19	.1611	.1224	.0766	.8870	.9171	.7552
20-24	.5373	.5029	.3994	.9698	.9866	.9676
25-29	.8491	.8270	.7752	.9885	.9948	.9913
30-34	.9448	.9472	.9432	.9953	.9958	.9944
35-39	.9738	.9739	.9783	.9976	.9976	.9957
40-44	.9805	.9895	.9850	.9976	.9985	.9955
45-49	.9872	.9918	.9890	.9979	.9989	.9967
Singulate Mean Age at Marriage	22.4	22.9	23.9	14.4	13.9	15.9

Changes in age at first marriage may be expected to have some impact on fertility, especially in a country like Bangladesh, in which extramarital fertility is virtually nonexistent. However, the distribution of currently married women, on which overall fertility would depend, is affected not only by age at first marriage but also by marital dissolution. Table 19 shows the proportions of women currently married by age group from the censuses of 1951, 1961, and 1974. Although the 1961 figures confuse the picture somewhat, from 1951 to 1974 the rise in age at first marriage has led to a decline in the proportion currently married under age 20. At the same time the proportions currently married above age 25 have increased substantially, as a result of a marked reduction in proportions widowed. For instance, in 1951, 20 percent of women aged 35 to 39 were widows, compared with 14 percent in 1961 and 9 percent in 1974. The decline in proportions widowed is so rapid that it gives rise to doubts about the data, though it may indicate some increase in the probability of remarriage.

In order to examine the effects on fertility of these changes in current marital status, a marital fertility schedule was calculated from the BRSFM data, by dividing the number of births in the year before the survey by the number of currently married women in each age group and then applied to each distribution of women by current marital status. The marital fertility schedule, shown in the last column of Table 19, was corrected for a half-year displacement, but was not adjusted for level, because only the distribution of fertility by age is important, or for denominator problems, which would tend to result in underestimates of marital fertility under age 20, where many first marriages are likely to have occurred in the six months before the survey.

The estimates of total fertility, calculated by applying the marital fertility schedule to the age distribution of women currently married, are also shown in Table 19. The lowest overall fertility is obtained for 1951, and the highest for 1961, with the 1974 value falling more or less between the two. The high 1961 value, however, is influenced by the high proportions currently married under age 25; if the more plausible 1951 proportions currently married under age 25 were used instead of the observed 1961 proportions, 1961 total fertility would be only 0.7 percent higher than that for 1974. Thus the two major trends in current marital status from 1951 to 1974--a rising age at marriage and a reduction in the incidence of widowhood--have had opposite effects on the total fertility. From 1951 to 1961, reduced proportions widowed were an upward influence on total fertility, whereas any impact of

TABLE 19 Proportions of the Female Population Currently Married by Age Group in 1951, 1961, and 1971, with Fertility Implications: Bangladesh

	Proportions of Women Currently Married			Marital Fertility Schedule
Age Group	1951 Census	1961 Census	1971 Census	(from BRSFM)
10-14	.2542	.3175	.0884	.0433
15-19	.8612	.8948	.7176	.1747
20-24	.9338	.9560	.9298	.2499
25-29	.9212	.9475	.9520	.2249
30-34	.8602	.9077	.9335	.1919
35-39	.7932	.8466	.8985	.1431
40-44	.6601	.7155	.8138	.0758
45-49	.6046	.6131	.7512	.0415
Implied Total Fertility	4.73	4.99	4.88	--

rising age at first marriage would have been small. From 1961 to 1974, changes in current marital status were probably a downward influence on fertility. Rising age at marriage reduced the proportions of women married in the younger age groups, but this decrease was to some extent counterbalanced by the continuing increase in proportions currently married in the older groups, itself a result of the continuing reduction in the incidence of widowhood.

From 1974 onward, a continued trend toward later marriage is likely to have more impact on fertility, since the mean age at first marriage will be moving into an age range in which marital fertility is high. At the same time, the effects of a continued reduction in the incidence of widowhood will have less and less impact on total fertility, since the potential for further increases in the proportions currently married is now small for those age groups in which marital fertility is high.

4 Mortality

Mortality information for Bangladesh is in general either indirect in its nature--consisting of measures of indicators that reflect mortality without being pure mortality parameters--or derived from sample surveys, with their associated risk of substantial sampling errors for individual age- and sex-specific mortality rates. For the conversion of indirect indicators into conventional mortality measures and for the smoothing and graduation of distorted mortality rates, it is useful to identify some general age pattern of mortality that broadly represents the true pattern. A convenient and flexible system proposed by Brass (1971b) is based on the observation that any two survivorship functions are approximately linearly related on a suitably transformed scale, from which it follows that the survivorship function of any particular life table will be linearly related, on a suitable scale, to some standard function. In practice, the relationship is only approximate, and the functioning of a model system based on the logit transformation (the logit of a proportion p is defined as $0.5 \log_e(1 - p)/p$) is improved the more closely the standard function matches that of the given life table. The four "regional" age patterns of mortality embodied in the Coale-Demeny (1966) model life tables provide a convenient range of standards on which to base a logit system.

In this study of mortality in Bangladesh, the "North" regional age pattern of mortality has been used to provide standards for the logit system. The "North" family was chosen for several reasons. Information on child mortality by age from the BFS shows rather low infant mortality relative to mortality between ages 1 and 5, a typical feature of the "North" pattern. In addition, transformed adult survivorship probabilities calculated from adjusted deaths by age from the PGE and BRSFM fall on a line with a slope nearer to 1.0 when plotted against a standard taken from the "North" family than when plotted against a standard from one of the other families, suggesting that the "North" mortality pattern best represents the relationship between child and adult mortality in Bangladesh. The relatively low old-age mortality indicated by the PGE and BRSFM data are also most closely approximated by the "North" pattern. The choice is not perfect, however. A comparison of age-specific mortality rates from the PGE and BRSFM with rates from life tables of similar mortality level from each of the regional families indicates little difference in performance overall, and the "North" family's rather high young-adult mortality does not seem to be a feature of Bangladeshi mortality. However, the choice of standard is not crucial to summary mortality measures, such as the expectation of life at birth or the crude death rate, so even if the age pattern of mortality cannot be well represented by the logit system using a "North" standard, the general conclusions of this section would not be greatly altered.

THE POPULATION GROWTH ESTIMATION (PGE) EXPERIMENT

The final report on the PGE (PIDE, 1971) does not give complete life tables based on the survey results, but it does give certain mortality measures based on deaths recorded by the longitudinal registration system and on deaths adjusted for omission by the Chandrasekaran and Deming method for the full survey period 1962-65. Table 20 shows the results.

Infant and Child Mortality

For females, the child mortality estimates based on adjusted deaths--an infant mortality rate of 131 per

TABLE 20 Mortality Measures by Age and Sex, from PGE 1962-65: Bangladesh

	Age-Specific Mortality Rates (per thousand)			
	Males		Females	
Age Group	LR	CD	LR	CD
Under 1	197	245	146	185
1-4	20	25	24	30
5-14	4	4	4	5
15-44	4	4	6	8
45+	31	36	31	36
All Ages	17	20	16	20
Infant Mortality Rate in 1964-65[a] (per thousand)	156	176	119	131

[a] Calculated as reported deaths under age 1 divided by reported births during period.

thousand live births and a death rate of 30 per thousand for ages 1-4--are similar to the child mortality parameters of the "North" female level 11 life table, which was used in Table 4 to analyze the 1961 age distribution; the model life table has an infant mortality rate of 129 per thousand and a death rate of 30 per thousand for the 1-4 age group. For males, the agreement with the model is not so close; the recorded mortality rates for infant mortality and mortality 1-4 are 176 and 25 per thousand, respectively, as compared with rates of 152 and 31 per thousand in the "North" model life table of level 11. It is difficult to compare the recorded mortality rates with those of models for older age groups, because the age distribution within the broad age groups used has an important effect on the death rates.

Apart from the 1961 census, which has an age distribution that is clearly unsatisfactory, there is no national data source against which the PGE estimates can be compared; in the case of child mortality, there is no internal consistency check that can be applied either. However, there is one sub-national source of data for a comparable period, namely the 1961-62 Demographic Survey of East Pakistan (DSEP), which collected a complete maternity history from a sample of some 4,000 ever-married women in central Bangladesh (Muniruzzaman, 1965, 1966a, 1966b; Obaidullah, 1966). Infant mortality rates have been calculated directly from the DSEP maternity histories for the period 1952-60 and are shown in Table 21.

The DSEP data also permit the application of an indirect mortality estimation method that uses information on the proportion dead of the children ever borne by women classified by standard age groups. Brass (1964) first proposed a method that made it possible to estimate probabilities of dying between birth and exact ages from such information; using fairly simple models of fertility and mortality, the Brass procedure made it possible to allow for the effects of the age pattern of childbearing on the proportions of children dead. Since that time, several authors have suggested refinements of the original Brass technique, among them Sullivan (1972), Trussell (1975), Brass (1975), Preston and Palloni (1978), and Feeney (1980). The method used here is Trussell's (Hill et al., 1981) and permits the selection of a suitable mortality pattern (one of the four regional mortality patterns embodied in the Coale-Demeny model

TABLE 21 Estimates of Infant and Child Mortality by Calendar Year, 1952-60, Calculated Directly from the DSEP Fertility Histories: Central Bangladesh

Year of Birth	Infant Mortality Rate[a] (per thousand)	Death Rate For Ages 1-4[a] (per thousand)
1952	173	33
1953	172	27
1954	167	20
1955	156	34
1956	156	23
1957	158	n.a.
1958	150	n.a.
1959	155	n.a.
1960	156	n.a.

[a] Weighted average of separate estimates for urban and rural areas.

Source: Schultz and DaVanzo (1970).

life tables) and the calculation of the time period to which the estimates of child mortality refer. Trussell used regression analysis on a large number of simulated cases of proportions dead among children borne by women classified by age to examine the relationship between the proportions of children dead [D(i)] and probabilities of dying between birth and exact ages x of childhood [q(x)] for a wide range of fertility and mortality patterns. Specifically, ratios of q(x) to D(i) were related to the parity ratios P(1)/P(2) and P(2)/P(3), used as indicators of the age pattern of childbearing. The regression coefficients obtained can then be used with observed parity ratios in order to estimate a factor to convert observed proportions dead [D(i)] into mortality measures [q(x)]. The application of the method to the child survival data from the DSEP is shown in Table 22.

The infant mortality rates shown in Table 21 are remarkably consistent over time, indicating an overall rate between 150 and 160 per thousand for the births occurring between 1955 and 1960. The indirectly obtained estimates shown in Table 22 confirm the general level of child mortality for a similar period, though it should be pointed out that the equivalent infant mortality rates given in Table 22 depend on the age pattern of mortality in the "North" model life tables. Another limitation of the DSEP data is that they were collected only in central Bangladesh, the sample universe covering only 27 percent of the total population of the country, so its results cannot be considered nationally representative. However, the regional variation in child mortality seems, on the basis of the BRSFM data for 1974, to be rather modest.

The results of the DSEP therefore seem to show a level of child mortality for the late 1950s that is very similar to the child mortality estimates derived from the PGE for the early 1960s. The time periods do not coincide exactly, of course, but the two surveys appear to confirm each other's estimates and to indicate that infant mortality remained rather constant from the mid-1950s to the mid-1960s.

The one national survey that might have provided child mortality estimates that could be compared with those from the PGE is the National Impact Survey (NIS). Unfortunately, however, the only data from the survey that have been tabulated are for women married at the time of the survey, and it might be suspected that the children of such women would have experienced below-average mortality risks. It is also suspected that

TABLE 22 Derivation of Child Mortality Estimates from Data on Children Ever Born and Surviving, DSEP 1961-62: Central Bangladesh

Age Group of Women	Average Number of Children		Age x	Probability of Dying by Age x q(x)	Time Reference of Estimate (years before survey) t*	Mortality Level Implied[a]	Equivalent Infant Mortality Rate[a] (per thousand)
	Ever Born	Surviving					
20-24	2.294	1.794	2	.1990	2.7	10.0	155
25-29	3.852	2.960	3	.2062	4.8	11.0	141
30-34	5.050	3.663	5	.2579	7.3	10.2	152

[a] From Coale-Demeny "North" model life tables.

child deaths were underreported by the NIS (Sirageldin et al., 1975); the estimated infant mortality rates are 139 for the period 1960-62, 116 for 1963-65, and 113 for 1966-68.

In conclusion, the confirmation available for the child mortality estimates from the PGE is not overwhelming, either because of differences in the populations exposed to risk or because of doubts about data reliability, but the agreement with other estimates is pleasingly close.

Adult Mortality

With regard to adult mortality, several techniques derived from stable population theory have been proposed for using the age structure of reported deaths, in conjunction with either the age structure of the population or an estimate of the rate of natural increase, to assess the completeness of death recording. Basically, these methods assume that the population is stable and that the proportion of deaths recorded is constant by age, at least after childhood.

The first method, proposed by Brass (1975), uses information on the age distribution of the population and of recorded deaths; from these, it estimates the completeness of death recording and the rate of natural increase of the population. A stable population has an age distribution that remains constant over time, so all age segments of such a population grow at the same rate. It thus follows that for all age segments the balance between new entrants to the segment and departures from it will be a constant proportion of the average membership of the segment, the proportion being the stable growth rate. If a series of population segments are defined as being of age a and over, the new entrants in a year to each segment are those that have an a-th birthday during the year, whereas the departures are the deaths in a year to those aged a and over. Dividing the new entrants by the average population produces a measure akin to a birth rate for the segment (described henceforth as the partial birth rate a+), and dividing the departures by the average population produces a partial death rate a+. A plot of partial birth rates against partial death rates for a series of values of a should yield a straight line with an intercept equal to the growth rate and a slope equal to unity. However, if the recording of deaths is incorrect by a constant factor, all the death rates will be too small or too large by that factor. The birth and death rates, therefore, will still fall on a straight line, which will still have an intercept equal to the growth rate but will have a slope equal to the reciprocal of the completeness of death reporting. For example, if the number of deaths is only 80 percent complete, the slope of the line would be 1.25.

An alternative way of using similar information has recently been proposed (Preston et al., 1980). In a stationary, or life table, population, the number of people aged a is equal to the number of deaths that occur after age a. In a stable population, the number aged a is equal to the sum of deaths at each age over a inflated by exponential factors $e^{r(b - a)}$, where r is the stable growth rate and b is the age at death, to allow for the effects of population growth on the age distribution of deaths. The completeness of death reporting can then be estimated by comparing the reported population aged a to that estimated from reported deaths. Although an estimate of r is apparently required for the application of the method, in practice the pattern of the completeness estimates for different initial ages a provides information about the true underlying growth rate.

In this study, the Brass method has been preferred, since it does not require heavy weighting of deaths at old ages. The age pattern of deaths from the PGE suggests that age at death was exaggerated for the elderly, and such an exaggeration will always affect the results of the method just outlined. The Brass method, however, is not affected as long as only points below the age at which exaggeration starts to be an important feature are considered. Thus, the death rate over age a, and over all ages younger than a, will not be affected by a tendency to exaggerate the age at death of someone aged a + 10, only by a tendency to exaggerate the age at death of someone under age a. The second method could be applied satisfactorily if the age distribution of deaths at old ages were initially adjusted, but the adjustment would be dependent upon models and remove some of the value of the technique.

Information on deaths and population by sex and five-year age groups is available from the PGE final report for 1964 and 1965; the numbers of deaths are available from both data sources--longitudinal registration (LR) and cross-sectional survey (CS)--as well as after adjustment by the Chandrasekaran-Deming formula to compensate for omissions (CD). The Brass method just described has been applied by sex to the numbers of adjusted deaths (CD) for the two years together. The partial birth rates and death rates are shown in Table 23 and are plotted against each other in Figure 2.

For both males and females, the points for young ages lie on a reasonably straight line, but the later points show a distinct sawtooth pattern and also droop down to the right of the trend line of the earlier points. The sawtooth pattern can be explained by age heaping of the population, and the tendency for the line to bend down to the right could be explained by the exaggeration of reported age at death. Points for younger ages should not be affected by either of these errors, so an attempt has been made to fit a straight line to these points, in the hope that they are more reliable. A subjective inspection suggested that the seventh to thirteenth points, covering the age categories 35+ to 65+, seemed to be only modestly affected by error, in both the male and female cases, so in each case a straight line was fitted to these points using a simple group-average fitting procedure. The lines are shown in Figure 2.

Another feature that stands out from Figure 2 is that the slopes of the two fitted lines are less than 1.0, indicating that the number of deaths after adjustment by the Chandrasekaran-Deming formula was too high. (It should be mentioned in passing that the method of fitting employed is not crucial to this result; it would be difficult to draw a plausible-looking line through the points that would have a slope equal to or greater than 1.0, and the inclusion of points above 13 would lead to a line with a much lower slope.) Table 24 shows the slope, an estimate of the reciprocal of completeness of death reporting, and the intercept, an estimate of the rate of natural increase, for males and females. The two growth rates--2.92 percent and 3.06 percent for males and females, respectively--are fairly similar to one another and not implausible for Bangladesh in the early 1960s. The completeness of death recording for male deaths is 1.25, indicating greater overreporting of male deaths than of female deaths, for which the estimated completeness is 1.14. When deaths at all ages above 5 are considered, the application of the Chandrasekaran-Deming correction increased the number of male deaths by

TABLE 23 Population and Deaths by Sex and Age, and Partial Birth and Death Rates, from PGE 1964-65: Bangladesh

	Males				Females			
Age Group (a, a + 4)	Population (hundreds)	CD Adjusted Deaths (hundreds)	Age a+ Partial Birth Rate	Age a+ Partial Death Rate	Population (hundreds)	CD Adjusted Deaths (hundreds)	Age a+ Partial Birth Rate	Age a+ Partial Death Rate
0-4	95,070	6,707			96,000	5,953		
5-9	103,230	649	.0410	.0109	102,510	679	.0444	.0112
10-14	73,270	201	.0464	.0122	57,010	134	.0464	.0125
15-19	43,550	149	.0380	.0145	42,270	362	.0346	.0145
20-24	33,890	137	.0294	.0163	43,040	288	.0348	.0156
25-29	39,690	105	.0320	.0181	43,020	345	.0426	.0175
30-34	38,020	302	.0409	.0213	34,740	254	.0490	.0200
35-39	36,440	201	.0490	.0246	27,510	257	.0502	.0236
40-44	27,180	195	.0550	.0307	25,270	120	.0547	.0277
45-49	23,300	291	.0571	.0379	18,180	162	.0609	.0358
50-54	21,000	365	.0681	.0470	20,640	306	.0731	.0450
55-59	12,820	270	.0767	.0611	9,800	221	.0937	.0642
60-64	14,290	578	.0867	.0775	11,450	485	.0937	.0821
65-69	6,340	342	.1215	.1087	4,110	139	.1386	.1227
70-74	5,420	516	.1105	.1414	3,240	385	.1032	.1740
75-79	1,990	252	.1420	.1893	1,480	186	.1216	.2201
80-84	1,930	322	.1214	.2279	1,480	379	.1233	.2783
85-89	470	104	.1846	.3185	360	96	.2000	.3141
90-94	480	166	.1145	.3735	280	67	.1143	.3446
95+	350	144	.2371	.4114	280	126	.2000	.4500

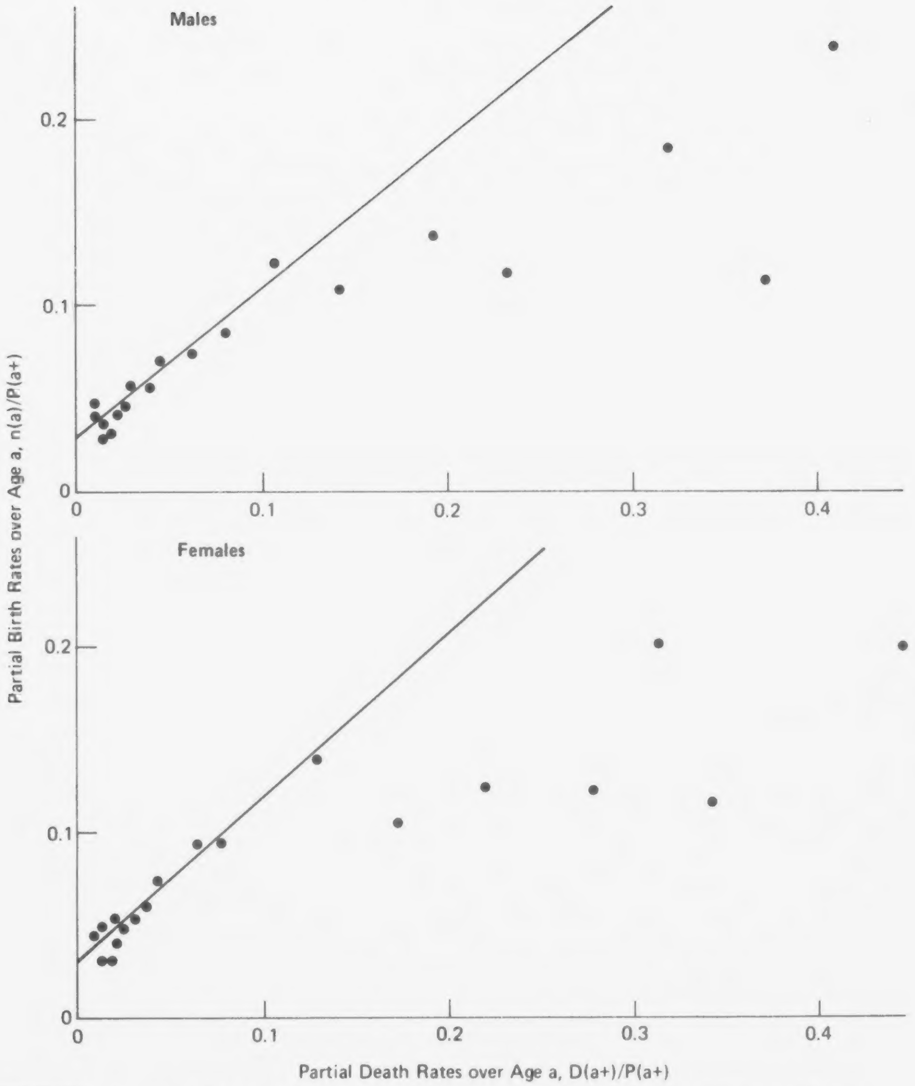


FIGURE 2 Partial birth and death rates over successive ages by sex, from PGE 1964-65: Bangladesh.

a factor of 1.20, and the number of female deaths by a factor of 1.17, over the number of registered deaths. It is tempting to draw the conclusion that the longitudinal registration of deaths over age 5 in Bangladesh by the PGE was approximately complete, relative to enumeration completeness, and that the matching with cross-sectional data and inflation by the CD formula actually worsened the results.

TABLE 24 Estimates of the Completeness of Death Recording and Rate of Natural Increase, from PGE 1964-65: Bangladesh

Sex	Completeness of Death Recording	Rate of Natural Increase (Percent)
Male	1.245	2.92
Female	1.136	3.06

Smoothing Estimates for a Composite Life Table

The adjusted deaths still show some fluctuations by age, so in order to construct a life table a smoothing procedure was applied. Recorded deaths adjusted for the overreporting estimated in Table 24 were combined with the recorded populations and used to calculate a life table for ages 5 to 65. Data for groups older than 65 were not included because exaggeration of age at death appears to become important in those groups. Following the principle of the Brass (1971b) logit life table system, the probabilities of surviving from age 5 to age a [l(a)/l(5)] were transformed into their logits and compared with similarly transformed survivorship probabilities from a standard life table--in this case a "North" level 10 life table of the appropriate sex from the Coale-Demeny (1966) regional families. A straight line was then fitted to each set of points, using a simple group-average procedure, and its slope and intercept were calculated. Broadly speaking, in the logit system, the slope of such a line is an indication of the age pattern of mortality in the observed life table relative to that of the standard, and its intercept is an indication of their relative levels. The straight line for males has a slope of 1.00 and an intercept of -0.465, indicating that the pattern of mortality matches that of the standard but at a lower level of mortality. For females, the slope was 1.03, also indicating a similar age pattern of mortality, and the intercept was -0.202, indicating lower mortality but not so much lower as in the case of males. Table 25 summarizes the calculations, and Figure 3 shows the points and fitted straight lines.

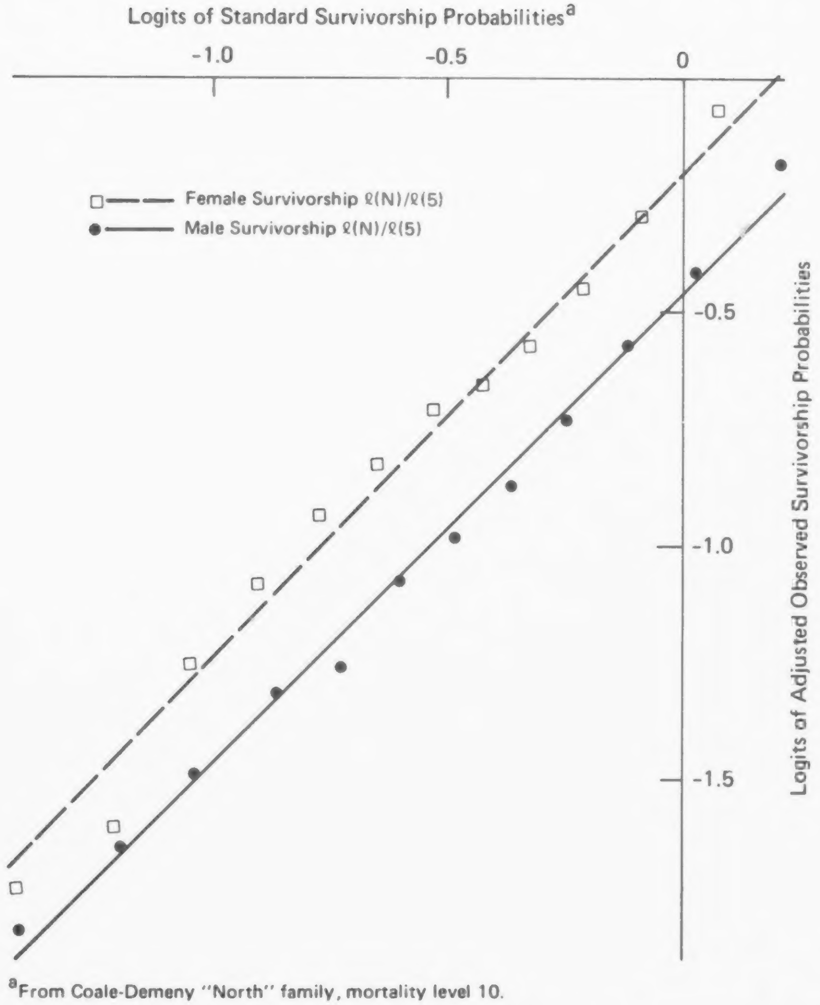
A smoothed life table for ages 5 and over can now be calculated from the standards, using the observed intercepts and slopes and extrapolating to ages over 65.

TABLE 25 Smoothing the Adjusted Age-Specific Mortality Rates from the PGE (1964-65), Using the Logit Transformation: Bangladesh

	Males					Females				
Age x	Adjusted Death Rate ${}_5m_x$	${}_5q_x$	l_x	Logit l_x	Standard ls_x	Adjusted Death Rate ${}_5m_x$	${}_5q_x$	l_x	Logit l_x	Standard ls_x
5	.00505	.0249	1.0000	--	--	.00583	.0287	1.0000	--	--
10	.00220	.0110	.9751	-1.8331	-1.4300	.00207	.0103	.9713	-1.7602	-1.4403
15	.00275	.0136	.9644	-1.6493	-1.2157	.00754	.0370	.9613	-1.6058	-1.2205
20	.00325	.0161	.9512	-1.4852	-1.0452	.00589	.0290	.9257	-1.2613	-1.0565
25	.00212	.0106	.9359	-1.3406	-0.8672	.00706	.0347	.8988	-1.0922	-0.9119
30	.00638	.0314	.9260	-1.2635	-0.7242	.00644	.0317	.8677	-0.9402	-0.7795
35	.00443	.0219	.8969	-1.0818	-0.6011	.00822	.0403	.8402	-0.8298	-0.6548
40	.00576	.0284	.8773	-0.9835	-0.4845	.00418	.0207	.8063	-0.7132	-0.5366
45	.01003	.0489	.8524	-0.8766	-0.3659	.00784	.0385	.7897	-0.6614	-0.4267
50	.01396	.0674	.8107	-0.7272	-0.2440	.01305	.0632	.7593	-0.5744	-0.3234
55	.01692	.0811	.7560	-0.5654	-0.1126	.01985	.0946	.7113	-0.4508	-0.2121
60	.03249	.1502	.6946	-0.4109	0.0346	.03729	.1705	.6440	-0.2965	-0.0813
65	--	--	.5903	-0.1825	0.2105	--	--	.5342	-0.0685	0.0826
70					0.4300					0.2940
75					0.7235					0.5722
80					1.1187					0.9367

Fitted Line for males: $\alpha = -0.465$, $\beta = 1.00$. See Figure 3.

Fitted line for females: $\alpha = -0.202$, $\beta = 1.03$. See Figure 3.



[a]From Coale-Demeny "North" family, mortality level 10.

FIGURE 3 Plots of logit transformations of adjusted and standard survivorship functions from age 5 by sex, from PGE 1964-65: Bangladesh.

The life table can be completed for ages 0-4 by using the child mortality estimates derived from the PGE for the period 1964-65, since these estimates seem to be reliable. Table 26 shows the composite life tables and the expectations of life at birth (e_0) and at age 10 (e_{10}). The female mortality advantage in infancy is reversed thereafter, with young adult females having a

TABLE 26 Composite Life Tables by Sex, from PGE 1964-65: Bangladesh

	Males		Females	
Age x	l(x)	q(x)	l(x)	q(x)
0	1.000	.1760	1.000	.1310
1	.824	.0942	.869	.1118
5	.746	.0214	.772	.0337
10	.730	.0123	.746	.0174
15	.721	.0125	.733	.0205
20	.712	.0197	.718	.0237
25	.698	.0215	.701	.0285
30	.683	.0234	.681	.0338
35	.667	.0270	.658	.0380
40	.649	.0339	.633	.0442
45	.627	.0415	.605	.0496
50	.601	.0549	.575	.0609
55	.568	.0757	.540	.0870
60	.525	.1124	.493	.1258
65	.466	.1717	.431	.19[illegible]9
70	.386	.2772	.347	.2997
75	.279	.4301	.243	4362
80	.159	--	.137	--
Life Expectancy at Birth (e_0)	48.6		47.6	
Life Expectancy at Age 10 (e_{10})	56.0		53.1	

particularly marked disadvantage. Males have a one-year advantage in life expectancy at birth; at age 10, however, the male advantage in life expectancy is close to three years.

THE BANGLADESH RETROSPECTIVE SURVEY OF FERTILTY AND MORTALITY (BRSFM)

The 1974 BRSFM collected a substantial amount of mortality-related information. With regard to child mortality, data were collected on children dead among those ever borne by each woman, by sex of child, and on the survival of the most recently born child. For adult mortality, data were collected on the survival of the

TABLE 27 Child Mortality Estimates, from BRSFM 1974: Bangladesh

Age Group of Mothers	Proportion of Children Dead	Age x	Probability of Dying by Age x q(x)	Time Reference of Estimate (years before survey) t*	Mortality Level Implied[a]	Equivalent Infant Mortality Rate (per thousand)[a]
Male Children						
20-24	.2114	2	.2010	2.6	10.6	158
25-29	.2239	3	.2072	4.5	11.5	145
30-34	.2359	5	.2288	6.7	11.9	139
Female Children						
20-24	.1955	2	.1858	2.6	10.0	142
25-29	.2020	3	.1863	4.5	11.4	124
30-34	.2202	5	.2126	6.7	11.6	122

Note: Average parity ratios used in applying the child mortality estimation procedure: for male children, P(1)/P(2) = .2095 and P(2)/P(3) = .5268; for female children, P(1)/P(2) = .2072 and P(2)/P(3) = .5334.

[a] From Coale-Demeny "North" model life tables.

mother and father of each respondent, on whether or not the respondent was the eldest surviving child of the mother or the father, on the survival of each ever-married respondent's first spouse, and on the deaths occurring in the household during the preceding two years by sex, age at death, and date of death. The data therefore permit the application of most of the indirect mortality estimation procedures that have been devised.

Child Mortality

Child mortality estimates by sex have been obtained from the proportions dead among children ever borne by women in standard five-year age groups using the Trussell procedure (Hill et al., 1981) described earlier. The estimates of q(x) and the implied mortality levels in the "North" family of model life tables are shown in Table 27. The results are not very consistent, age by age, but on average they imply a level of child mortality of 11.0 for females and 11.3 for males, suggesting that although female child mortality is somewhat lower than that of males, the differential is smaller than that embodied in the "North" model life tables. The plausibility and consistency of the sex ratios of children ever born as reported by women in the age range 20-34, shown in Table 14, indicate that the female advantage in child mortality has not arisen entirely because of differential omission by sex of dead children. For comparison purposes, the values of l(5) in the life tables from the PGE (Table 26) imply levels of 10.8 for males and 10.9 for females in the "North" model life tables.

Alternative child mortality estimates can be derived from the data on survival of each woman's most recent live birth. The proportion surviving of births in the year before the survey should approximate the life table function ${}_1L_0$, person-years-lived between birth and first birthday; the proportion surviving of births in the year before that, 1 to 2 years before the survey, should approximate ${}_1L_1$. Table 28 shows the proportions surviving by age group of mother and the mortality level in the "North" model life tables that each implies.

The proportions surviving among the births in the year before the BRSFM show a plausible pattern by age, with heavy child mortality at the extremes of the childbearing span and relatively low mortality risks for the children of women aged 25 to 34. The level of the proportions

TABLE 28 Estimates of Survivorship Probabilities Derived from Data on Survival of Most Recent Child, BRSFM 1974: Bangladesh

Age Group of Women	Proportion Surviving of Births in Year Before Survey	Implied Mortality Level[a]	Proportion Surviving of Births 1 to 2 Years Before Survey	Implied Mortality Level[a]
10-19	.8750	7.8	.9127	16.4
20-24	.9067	11.0	.9434	19.2
25-29	.9146	11.9	.9392	18.8
30-34	.9106	11.4	.9384	18.7
35-39	.9016	10.4	.9283	17.8
40-44	.9067	11.0	.9151	16.6
45-49	.8719	7.6	.8773	13.6
All	.9030	10.6	.9325	18.1

[a] From the Coale-Demeny "North" model life tables.

indicates slightly heavier child mortality than does the analysis of proportions dead among children ever born (from Table 27), the mortality level implied by the survivorship of all births in the last year being 10.6, compared with a level of 11.2 for both sexes combined obtained from proportions dead among children ever born.

The information on survival of children born in the year before the survey thus appears to be quite good, being internally consistent and supporting the general level of the child mortality estimates derived independently from data on children ever born and children surviving. The slight discrepancy could be due to real differences if, for example, child mortality actually was slightly higher in the year before the survey than on average over the longer reference period of the other estimates or if the true age pattern of mortality under age 5 was not adequately represented by the "North" family of models (if, for instance, true infant mortality were higher relative to child mortality than in the models).

Unlike the data on survival of births in the year before the survey, the data on survival of births in the period one to two years before the survey are clearly inadequate. Although the age pattern is still plausible, with lower rates of mortality for the children of women aged 20 to 34, the overall level of mortality is unacceptably low and clearly inconsistent with the proportions surviving of births in the year before the survey, since the proportions surviving for the longer period are higher for every age group of mother than those for the shorter period.

Adult Mortality

The BRSFM data on deaths by age and sex occurring in the household during the 12 months before the survey make possible the application of the same methods of analysis described above in the section on the PGE. The BRSFM deaths, tabulated for five-year age groups only up to age 75, show no tendency toward systematic exaggeration of age at death, and all three possible methods of analysis--those proposed by Brass (1975), Preston (Preston and Hill, 1980), and Coale (Hill et al., 1981)--give results that are essentially the same. For the sake of consistency, and since the choice is not important to the results, the Brass method has again been used, and straight lines have been fitted to points for the same age range, that is, for categories 35+ to 65+. Table 29 shows the basic data and the partial birth and death rates, Figure 4 displays the points and fitted straight lines, and Table 30 summarizes the estimates derived for completeness of recording and rate of natural increase by sex. The rates of natural increase by sex are not as consistent as in the case of the PGE application (Table 24), the male rate being considerably lower than the female rate. The result of this discrepancy might be a slight exaggeration of the mortality advantage of males over females.

Smoothing Estimates for a Composite Life Table

The smoothing procedure applied to the adjusted mortality rates from the PGE can also be applied to those from the BRSFM: constructing a life table from age 5, transforming into logits the proportions surviving to each age, and comparing the logits with those of a standard life table. The calculations are summarized in Table 31, and Figure 5 plots the logits of the life tables calculated from the adjusted reported deaths against those of the standards, Coale-Demeny "North" tables of level 10. Once again, the overall fit is reasonably good, the slope of the lines being 0.98 for

TABLE 29 Population and Deaths by Sex and Age, and Partial Birth and Death Rates, from BRSFM 1974: Bangladesh

Age Group (a, a + 4)	Males Population (hundreds)	Reported Deaths (hundreds)	Age a+ Partial Birth Rate	Age a+ Partial Death Rate	Females Population (hundreds)	Reported Deaths (hundreds)	Age a+ Partial Birth Rate	Age a+ Partial Birth Rate
0-4	53,520	2,202			54,900	1,785		
5-9	61,850	115	.0365	.0040	62,000	158	.0405	.0038
10-14	53,480	70	.0454	.0045	46,750	73	.0480	.0042
15-19	33,230	53	.0432	.0053	30,150	84	.0427	.0049
20-24	26,480	35	.0357	.0061	26,530	53	.0378	.0053
25-29	25,760	41	.0371	.0070	26,070	52	.0427	.0060
30-34	21,010	31	.0406	.0082	20,160	63	.0475	.0071
35-39	20,730	39	.0443	.0097	17,720	41	.0491	.0081
40-44	17,240	47	.0517	.0119	14,800	36	.0548	.0099
45-49	13,680	58	.0550	.0147	11,350	33	.0587	.0123
50-54	12,160	73	.0608	.0180	10,490	57	.0657	.0156
55-59	7,940	83	.0663	.0228	6,070	64	.0728	.0202
60-64	8,770	127	.0746	.0272	6,970	94	.0783	.0237
65-69	4,390	77	.0965	.0354	3,250	36	.1054	.0311
70-74	4,680	131	.0982	.0439	3,290	87	.1016	.0411
75+	4,560	274	.2029	.0602	3,150	178	.2045	.0565

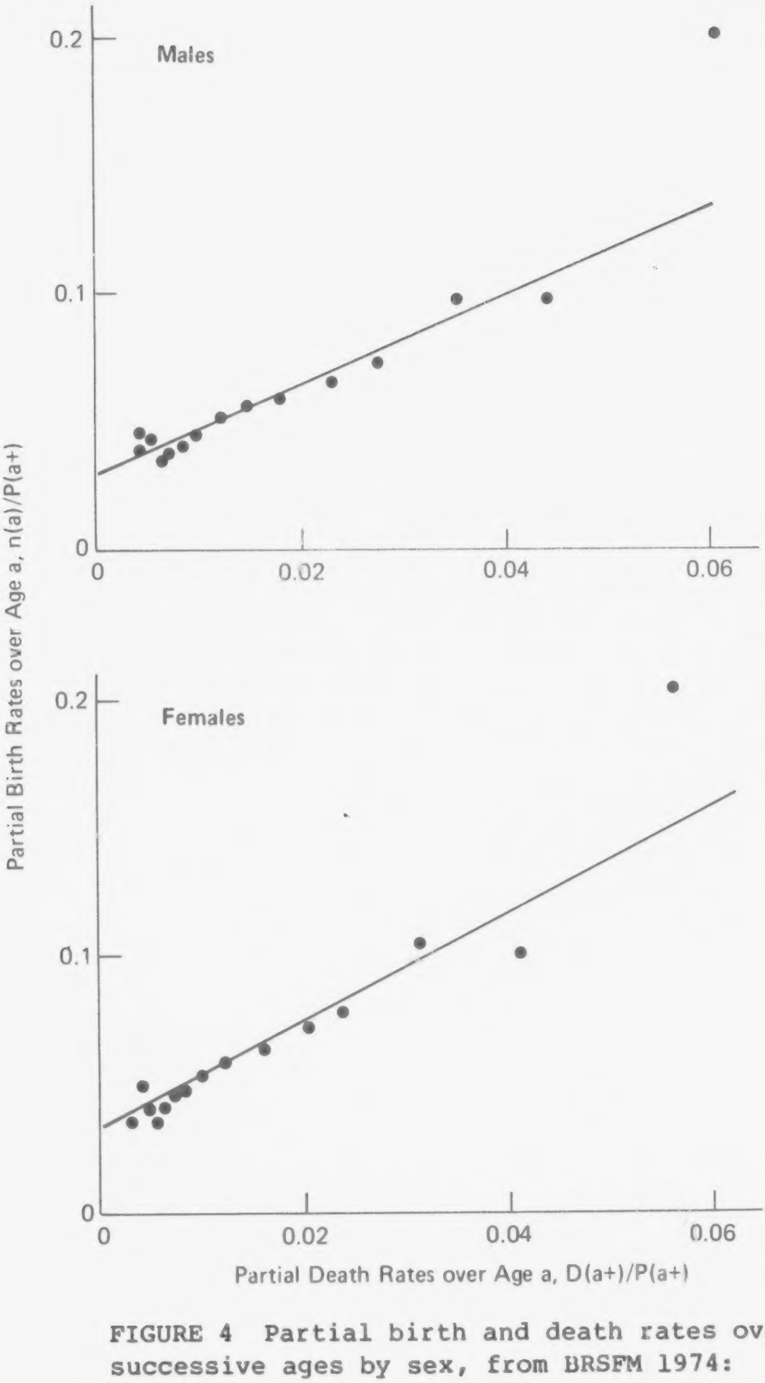


FIGURE 4 Partial birth and death rates over successive ages by sex, from BRSFM 1974: Bangladesh.

TABLE 30 Estimates of the Completeness of Death Recording and Rate of Natural Increase, from BRSFM 1974: Bangladesh

Sex	Completeness of Death Recording	Rate of Natural Increase (percent)
Male	0.570	2.92
Female	0.475	3.29

males and 0.97 for females, very similar to the values from the PGE. The intercepts are different, however, suggesting an overall decline in mortality between the ages of 5 and 65 during the period.

It can also be noted that the deviations of the observed points from the fitted lines are very similar, by sex, in Figures 3 and 5. For females, survival to age 10 or 15 is higher than in the model; then there is a period of excess mortality in the age range 15 to 30, followed by a period of lower-than-expected mortality between 40 and 50 or 55, after which mortality appears to increase more rapidly than in the model. For males, there seems to be a period of lower-than-expected mortality between 25 and 45, after which mortality again appears to increase more rapidly than is suggested by the model. It may be that these similarities between the patterns estimated from the PGE and BRSFM arise from similarities in errors, but it is suggestive of the possibility that the age pattern of mortality in Bangladesh may really differ from that of the model, that the period of excess female mortality coincides with the age range in which fertility is highest, during which maternal mortality would also be most important. The "North" model life table should therefore be regarded as only an approximation to the true age pattern of mortality.

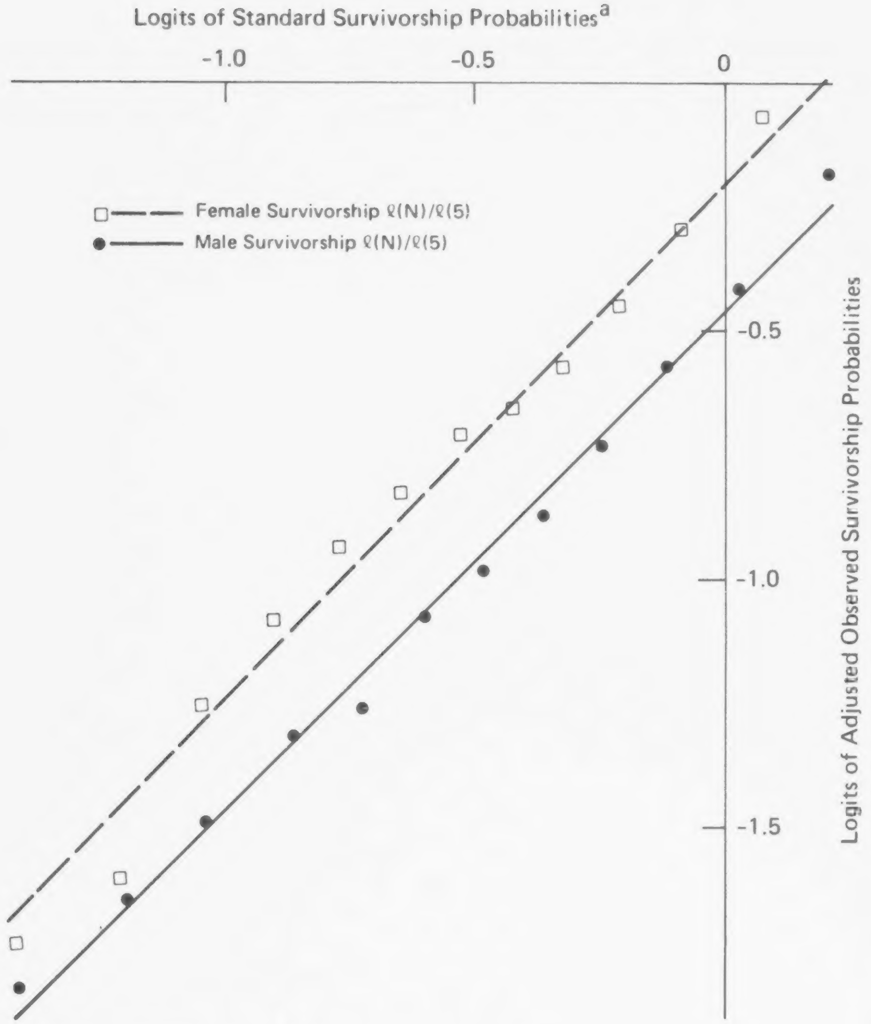
Once again, the life tables over age 5 can be completed by adding a section for birth to age 5, in this case derived from the child mortality estimates presented in Table 27. Since there is no evidence that child mortality was changing in the years prior to 1974, there is no need to take into account the differences in the reference periods of the estimates. Values of l(1) and l(5) have been taken from "North" model life tables of level 11.0 for females and 11.3 for males, and the smoothed survivorship probabilities from age 5 have been

TABLE 31 Smoothing the Adjusted Age-Specific Mortality Rates from the BRSFM (1974), Using the Logit Transformation: Bangladesh

Age x	Males					Females				
	Adjusted Death Rate $_5m_x$	$_5q_x$	l_x	Logit l_x	Standard ls_x	Adjusted Death Rate $_5m_x$	$_5q_x$	l_x	Logit l_x	Standard ls_x
5	.00327	.0162	1.0000	--	--	.00536	.0265	1.0000	--	--
10	.00231	.0115	.9838	-2.0527	-1.4300	.00330	.0164	.9735	-1.8027	-1.4403
15	.00278	.0138	.9725	-1.7828	-1.2157	.00588	.0290	.9576	-1.5589	-1.2205
20	.00232	.0115	.9591	-1.5772	-1.0452	.00422	.0209	.9299	-1.2922	-1.0565
25	.00281	.0140	.9480	-1.4517	-0.8672	.00417	.0206	.9104	-1.1595	-0.9119
30	.00260	.0129	.9348	-1.3312	-0.7242	.00658	.0324	.8916	-1.0538	-0.7795
35	.00328	.0163	.9227	-1.2399	-0.6011	.00491	.0243	.8638	-0.9194	-0.6548
40	.00480	.0237	.9077	-1.1430	-0.4845	.00508	.0251	.8419	-0.8361	-0.5366
45	.00745	.0366	.8862	-1.0261	-0.3659	.00619	.0305	.8208	-0.7607	-0.4267
50	.01057	.0515	.8538	-0.8823	-0.2440	.01147	.0558	.7958	-0.6800	-0.3234
55	.01826	.0873	.8098	-0.7244	-0.1126	.02220	.1052	.7514	-0.5530	-0.2121
60	.02534	.1191	.7391	-0.5207	.0346	.02851	.1331	.6724	-0.3594	-0.0813
65			.6511	-0.3119	.2105			.5829	-0.1673	.0826
70					.4300					.2940
75					.7235					.5722
80					1.1187					.9367

Fitted line for males: $\alpha = -0.611$, $\beta = .980$. See Figure 5.

Fitted line for females: $\alpha = -0.317$, $\beta = .970$. See Figure 5.



[a] From Coale-Demeny "North" family, mortality level 10.

FIGURE 5 Plots of logit transformations of adjusted and standard survivorship functions from age 5 by sex, from BRSFM 1974: Bangladesh.

grafted onto these bases. The resulting composite life tables are shown in Table 32. Expectation of life at birth has increased by 3 years for males and by 2.1 years for females relative to the PGE estimates, almost entirely as a result of the apparent decline in mortality over age 5. The male-female differential in expectation of life at birth has also increased from one year to almost two years.

Further information about the level of adult mortality is available from the data on the survival of the mother and father of each respondent and on the survival of the first spouse of each ever-married respondent. Techniques based on models have been developed to convert proportions with surviving parents or spouses into life

TABLE 32 Composite Life Tables by Sex, BRSFM 1974: Bangladesh

	Males		Females	
Age x	l(x)	q(x)	l(x)	q(x)
0	1.000	.1474	1.000	.1293
1	.853	.1119	.871	.1104
5	.757	.0176	.775	.0314
10	.744	.0091	.750	.0164
15	.737	.0104	.738	.0174
20	.729	.0150	.725	.0203
25	.719	.0163	.710	.0237
30	.707	.0178	.694	.0279
35	.694	.0209	.674	.0323
40	.680	.0261	.652	.0361
45	.662	.0328	.629	.0401
50	.640	.0434	.604	.0505
55	.612	.0601	.573	.0699
60	.576	.0898	.533	.1045
65	.524	.1421	.477	.1629
70	.450	.2401	.400	.2573
75	.342	.3910	.297	.3881
80	.208	--	.182	--
Life Expectancy at Birth (e_0)	51.6		49.7	
Life Expectancy at Age 10 (e_{10})	58.9		55.7	

table survivorship probabilities by allowing for the effects of non-mortality factors such as the age pattern of fertility or mortality (Brass and Hill, 1973; Hill, 1977; Hill and Trussell, 1977). New and, it is hoped, improved techniques of analysis have recently been developed for each of these types of data except survival of father, and the new techniques (Hill et al, 1981) have been used here. In the case of survival of father, the original methodology was used, but the calculations were repeated for respondents of both sexes, rather than just females, to which the analysis was limited in the Survey Report (Blacker, 1977).

Orphanhood Data

Table 33 shows the estimates of female adult survivorship derived from information on survival of mother, and Table 34 shows the corresponding estimates of male mortality. Once again, the logit transformation provides a method for examining the consistency of the estimates with survivorship probabilities from model life tables; model tables of mortality level 10 from the "North" family were used as the reference standard. Figure 6 shows the logit transformations of estimated survivorship probabilities plotted against those of the standard.

For both males and females, the points in Figure 6 lie approximately on straight lines, if the point for the oldest age group is excluded in each case. However, the parameters of the straight lines--a slope of 1.28 and intercept of -0.195 for males and a slope of 1.16 and intercept of -0.050 for females--are not even remotely consistent with those estimated in Figure 5 from corrected deaths; the estimates based on orphanhood data indicate both generally heavier mortality and an age pattern in which mortality increases much more rapidly with age.

Both these inconsistencies could be explained by changes in adult mortality over the period during which the deaths were occurring among the respondents' parents. For both fathers and mothers, the age range of respondents for whom data were used was 15 to 49, which means that the exposure periods for the parents at risk ranged from 15 to 50 years before the survey. If adult mortality had been changing, the estimates of mortality derived from orphanhood data would refer to times in the past, and as age of respondent increases, the reference

TABLE 33 Estimates of Female Adult Survivorship from Data on Survival of Mother, BRSFM 1974: Bangladesh

Age Group of Respondent	Proportion with Surviving Mother	N	$\frac{l(25 + N)}{l(25)}$	Logit $\frac{l(25 + N)}{l(25)}$	Standard Logit $\frac{l(25 + N)}{l(25)}$
15-19	.9064	20	.9014	-1.1063	-.7397
20-24	.8585	25	.8565	-0.8933	-.5825
25-29	.7698	30	.7716	-0.6087	-.4285
30-34	.6579	35	.6623	-0.3368	-.2614
35-39	.5355	40	.5384	-0.0770	-.0658
40-44	.4190	45	.4142	0.1733	.1722
45-49	.3175	50	.3008	0.4218	.4710

Mean age at childbearing for mothers in the population = 27.1 years.

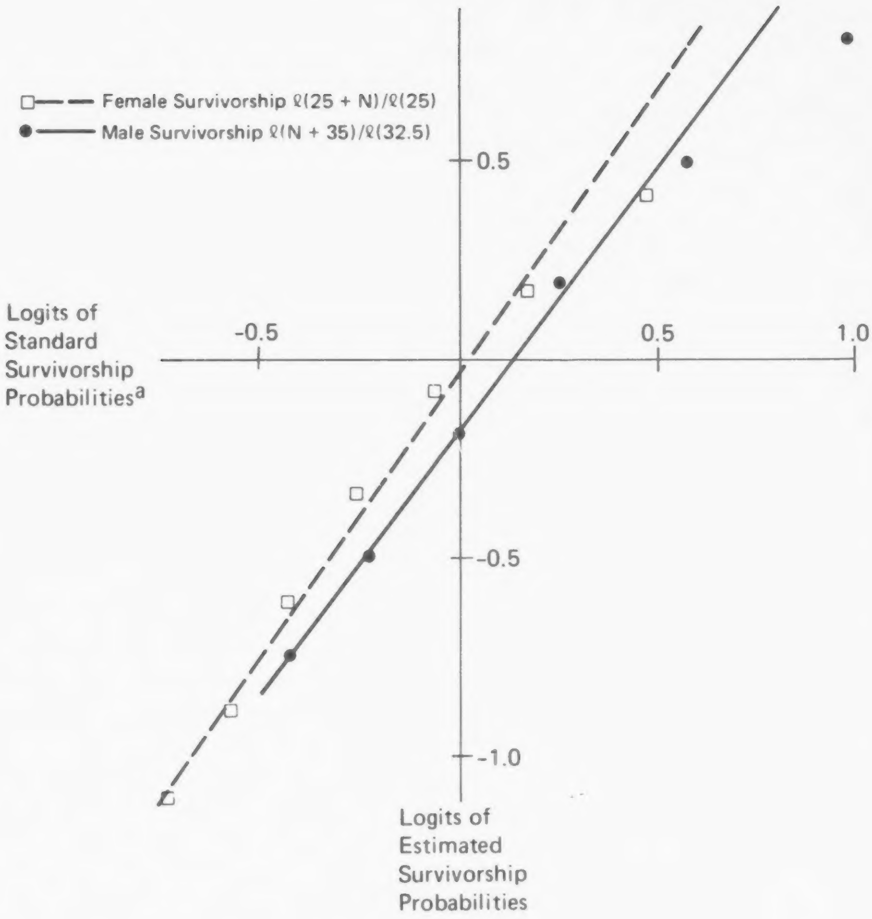
TABLE 34 Estimates of Male Adult Survivorship from Data on Survival of Father, BRSFM 1974: Bangladesh

Age Group of Respondent	Proportion with Surviving Father	N	$\frac{l(N + 35)}{l(32.5)}$	Logit $\frac{l(N + 35)}{32.5}$	Standard Logit $\frac{ls(N + 35)}{ls(32.5)}$
15-19	.8172	20	.8145	-.7396	-.4344
20-24	.7289	25	.7298	-.4969	-.2269
25-29	.5971	30	.5971	-.1967	-.0040
30-34	.4498	35	.4228	.1556	.2518
35-39	.3261	40	.2669	.5053	.5728
40-44	.2122	45	.1568	.8411	.9859
45-49	.1477	--	--	--	--

Mean age at childbearing for fathers in the population = 36 years.

time would recede further into the past. Thus if adult mortality had been declining, estimates based on reports of older respondents would reflect higher and higher average mortality risks; even the difference in slope by sex would be explained if male adult mortality had declined faster than female adult mortality.

If assumptions are made about the regularity of mortality trends in the past, it is theoretically possible to identify the "time ago" of a period life



^a From Coale-Demeny "North" family, mortality level 10.

FIGURE 6 Plots of logit transformations of standard survivorship probabilities against those estimated from orphanhood data, BRSFM 1974: Bangladesh.

table that has the survivorship probabilities implied by different indirect mortality estimators. Brass (1980) has recently developed a method for converting data on proportions with mother surviving in each age group into estimates of female survival from age 25 to age 60, l(60)/l(25), and for estimating the length of time before the survey of the period life table having each value of l(60)/l(25). The method has been applied to the maternal survivorship data from the BRSFM, and the results are shown in Table 35. Brass has also developed a method for

TABLE 35 Survivorship Estimates and Their Time Location, Derived from Data on Survival of Mother, BRSFM 1974: Bangladesh

Age Group of Respondent	Estimates of Female Survival from Age 25 to Age 60 1(60/1(25)	Reference Period t* (years before survey)
15-19	.748	7.7
20-24	.736	9.5
25-29	.696	11.2
30-34	.662	13.1
35-39	.645	14.8
40-44	.647	16.4
45-49	.674	17.2

Source: Brass (1980).

estimating the time location of measures of male mortality obtained from data on survival of father, but since the estimates do not resolve the problems inherent in the results obtained, they are not presented here.

The estimates suggest that female adult mortality fell quite sharply over the period 15 years to 8 years before the survey. From that point up to the survey, however, it seems to have remained steady. The estimate for the period 7.7 years before the survey is 0.748, which matches closely an estimate of 0.751 from the BRSFM female life table (Table 32) that has a reference date of half a year before the survey. The adjusted PGE female life table (Table 26), which refers to the period approximately 9.7 years before the BRSFM, is less consistent with the "dated" orphanhood estimate, the value of 1(60)/1(25) being 0.704, compared with the orphanhood-based estimate of 0.736 for 9.5 years before the survey.

Once put in an appropriate time frame, therefore, the female adult mortality estimates derived from data on survival of mother seem to indicate somewhat lower mortality than the adjusted age-specific death rates used to derive the life tables summarized in Tables 26 and 32. In view of uncertainties about the accuracy of parental survival data, the mortality levels summarized in the life tables are preferred to the lower mortality estimates indicated by maternal orphanhood. Unfortunately, no technique has yet been developed for estimating the reference period of male survivorship probabilities obtained from data on survival of father.

Widowhood Data

Table 36 shows estimates of female adult mortality derived from information on survival of first wife by age of male respondent, and Table 37 shows estimates of male adult mortality derived from information on survival of first husband by age of female respondent. Brass has developed a procedure for estimating the reference period of mortality estimates derived from widowhood data, but since the results do not resolve any of the problems posed by the estimates, they have not been included here.

The logit transformation can again be used as a way of looking at the consistency of the estimates; the results are shown in Figure 7. The first two female mortality points, based on data from male respondents aged 25 to 34, show unrealistically heavy mortality, though the remaining points do fall on a reasonably straight line; a line fitted by group means has a slope of 0.98, similar to other estimates, and an intercept of -0.092, indicating heavier female adult mortality than other estimates. Given the lack of adjustment for reference period, which ought to affect the estimates, it is surprising that the slope is close to unity. It seems likely that a tendency on the part of older male respondents to overreport surviving first wives has counterbalanced the heavier mortality risks such wives should have experienced, and the result is a not implausible age pattern of survivorship.

The estimates of male adult mortality are somewhat erratic, especially for respondents in their 20s, but they do lie around a straight line. Once again, a line has been fitted to group means, using points for respondents over 30, the line having a slope of 1.22 and intercept 0.04. Thus for female respondents, the expected pattern of higher estimates of mortality from the older respondents does appear. It may be noticed in passing that the overall level of the male adult mortality estimates based on widowhood is higher than that of the estimates based on survival of father, despite a reference period that would be closer to the present; thus, it seems likely that the number of surviving fathers has been exaggerated.

In conclusion, it may be said that the performance of

TABLE 36 Estimates of Female Adult Survivorship from Data on Survival of First Wife, BRSFM 1974: Bangladesh

Age Group of Male Respondents	Proportion with Surviving First Wife	N	l(N) / l(20)	Logit l(N) / l(20)	Standard Logit ls(N) / ls(20)
25-29	.9526	25	.9498	-1.4701	-1.6600
30-34	.9316	30	.9152	-1.1894	-1.2641
35-39	.9150	35	.8961	-1.0773	-1.0088
40-44	.8763	40	.8518	-0.8744	-0.8117
45-49	.8409	45	.8133	-0.7358	-0.6506
50-54	.7916	50	.7577	-0.5701	-0.5117
55-59	.7586	55	.7177	-0.4665	-0.3712

Singulate mean ages at marriage: male = 24.33 years, female = 16.37 years.

TABLE 37 Estimates of Male Adult Survivorship from Data on Survival of First Husband, BRSFM 1974: Bangladesh

Age Group of Female Respondents	Proportion with Surviving First Husband	N	l(N) / l(20)	Logit l(N) / l(20)	Standard Logit ls(N) / ls(20)
20-24	.9583	25	.9667	-1.6842	-1.5282
25-29	.9408	30	.9520	-1.4937	-1.1560
30-34	.8948	35	.8889	-1.0398	-0.9244
35-39	.8386	40	.8609	-0.9114	-0.7399
40-44	.7507	45	.7832	-0.6422	-0.5727
45-49	.6765	50	.7259	-0.4870	-0.4147
50-54	.5452	55	.6153	-0.2348	-0.2551
55-59	.4394	60	.5326	-0.0653	-0.0850

Singulate mean ages at marriage: male = 24.33 years, female = 16.37 years.

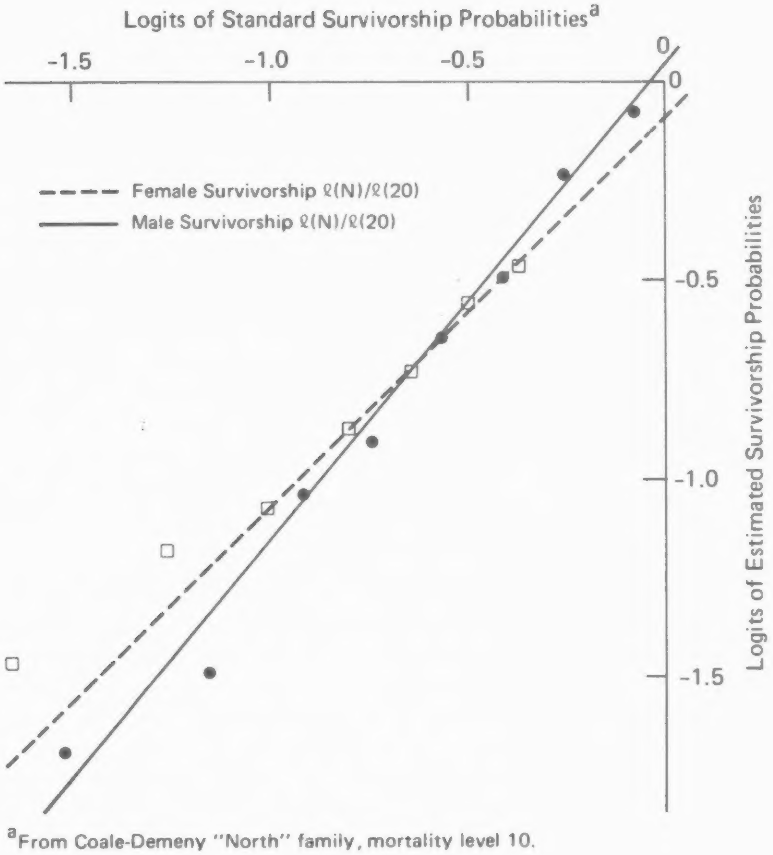


FIGURE 7 Plots of logit transformations of standard survivorship probabilities from age 20 against those estimated from widowhood data, BRSFM 1974: Bangladesh.

the indirect procedures for estimating adult mortality is disappointing, partly because of the effects of changes in adult mortality during the reference period and partly because of shortcomings of the data.

THE BANGLADESH FERTILITY SURVEY (BFS)

The fertility histories collected by the BFS make possible the estimation of child mortality both directly, by relating the deaths of children born in a particular year to all the births recorded in that year, and indirectly, by analyzing the information on the proportion dead among children ever born at the time of the survey.

Table 38 shows the number of births for each calendar year from 1960 to 1974 and the number of deaths occurring to those births by ages 1, 2, and 5. For each year, a life table survivorship function l(x), for values of x of 1, 2, and 5, has been calculated for that year's birth cohort. (For recent years, of course, the life tables are incomplete, since not all the children have reached the relevant ages.) There is little indication of a sustained trend in child mortality over the period, although the heaviest mortality is for the years 1961 and 1962; thereafter, despite some fluctuations the level remains essentially constant through to the early 1970s. The age pattern of child mortality, with higher risks between ages 2 and 5 than between 1 and 2 in all cases, provides a further indication that "North" model life tables are the best representation of Bangladeshi mortality among the Coale-Demeny regional families,

TABLE 38 Direct Estimates of Infant and Child Survivorship Probabilities from Fertility Histories, BFS 1976: Bangladesh

Year	Number of Births	Number of Deaths			Survivorship Probabilities		
		Under 1	Under 2	Under 5	l(1)	l(2)	l(5)
1960	775	117	137	170	.849	.823	.781
1961	867	154	178	223	.822	.795	.743
1962	892	157	171	215	.824	.808	.759
1963	1,016	145	169	207	.857	.834	.796
1964	1,116	160	182	247	.857	.837	.779
1965	1,158	163	183	236	.859	.842	.796
1966	1,333	181	224	291	.864	.832	.782
1967	1,310	176	220	286	.866	.845	.798
1968	1,403	177	203	275	.874	.855	.804
1969	1,418	182	214	305	.872	.849	.785
1970	1,481	200	246	325	.865	.834	.780
1971	1,486	207	253	*	.861	.830	*
1972	1,282	185	226	*	.856	.824	*
1973	1,335	196	227	*	.853	.830	*
1974	1,304	156	*	*	.880	*	*

*Not calculated because not all children in the group would have been exposed to the risk of dying for the full age range.

TABLE 39 Child Mortality Estimates Derived from Data on Children Dead Among Those Ever Born, BFS 1976: Bangladesh

Age Group of Women	Proportion of Children Dead	Age x	Probability of Dying by Age x q(x)	Time Reference of Estimate (years before survey) t*	Mortality Level Implied[a]	Equivalent Infant Mortality Rate[a] (per thousand)
20-24	.2054	2	.1874	2.80	10.2	152
25-29	.2305	3	.2104	4.69	11.0	141
30-34	.2385	5	.2308	6.85	11.9	129

Note: Average parity ratios used in applying the child mortality estimation procedure: P(1)/P(2) = 0.2540, P(2)/P(3) = 0.5552.

[a] From Coale-Denemy "North" model life tables.

though the observed $_1q_1$ is rather low relative to the infant mortality rate $_1q_0$.

Table 39 shows the estimation of child mortality from the proportions dead among children ever born, using Trussell's procedure (Hill et al., 1981), outlined above. The estimates by age group are not remarkably consistent, implying mortality levels ranging from 10.2 to 11.9 and infant mortality rates ranging from 129 per thousand to 152 per thousand; however, the variations are not surprising in view of the real fluctuations in child mortality from year to year. The general level of the estimates is consistent with the results of the BRSFM (Table 27) and with the year-by-year estimates from the BFS, shown in Table 38.

THE CHOLERA RESEARCH LABORATORY (CRL)

The CRL's Demographic Surveillance System in Matlab thana provides a wealth of mortality data for this area of Bangladesh, though the levels and patterns of mortality are less likely to be representative of the country as a whole than are those of fertility, given the above-average medical services available there. Table 40 shows crude death rates and infant mortality rates for the period 1966-77. The rates show clearly the impact of natural disasters and political events during the period, with very high mortality in 1971-72, during the War of Liberation, and again in 1975, after the 1974 famine. In general, the Matlab data indicate a slightly lower mortality level than that estimated for the country as a whole, but show no sign of any marked trend over time.

The Demographic Surveillance System in Teknaf thana gives mortality estimates for the period 1976-77, the infant mortality rate being 161 for males and 155 for females, the crude death rate being 16.1 for males and 16.9 for females (Rahman et al., 1980). These estimates are very consistent with the general level of mortality found for Bangladesh as a whole, though of course Teknaf cannot be regarded as representative of the whole country.

TABLE 40 Crude Death Rates and Infant Mortality Rates, from CRL 1966-77: Matlab Thana, Bangladesh

Period	Crude Death Rate (per thousand)	Infant Mortality Rate (per thousand)
1966-67	15.0	111
1967-68	16.6	125
1968-69	15.0	124
1969-70	14.9	128
1970-71	14.8	131
1971-72	21.0	147
1972-73	16.2	128
1973-74	14.2	not available
1974	16.5	138
1975	20.8	174
1976	14.8	112
1977	13.6	114

Source: Chowdhury and Sheikh (1980).

SUMMARY

Child Mortality

Most information about child mortality in Bangladesh comes in the form of reports by women on the survival of their children. Pregnancy history surveys from the DSEP, NIS, and BFS provide this information in such a way that it can either be aggregated into proportions dead by age of woman at the time of the survey or disaggregated into births and child deaths by period. Simpler retrospective surveys, such as the BRSFM, provide only the aggregated information. Additional information about child mortality is available from the adjusted sample registration of the PGE and unadjusted registration in a small study area, part of Matlab thana in central southern Bangladesh.

The estimates available are all remarkably consistent, with the single exception of those derived from the NIS data. The infant mortality rate seems to have been somewhere in the neighborhood of 130 to 160 per thousand from the mid-1950s to the mid-1970s. There is some variation from year to year but little sign of an underlying trend, though there is some indication that child mortality may have fallen in the early 1950s. Child mortality between the ages of 1 and 4 seems to be fairly high relative to infant mortality. Lower female mortality in infancy seems to be reversed between the ages of 1 and 4. Estimates of infant mortality from the Matlab study area are somewhat lower than those obtained for the country as a whole, but again show no obvious trend.

Adult Mortality

Estimates of adult mortality in Bangladesh are based either upon registered or recorded deaths by age or upon reports on the survival of close relatives, specifically parents or spouses. The completeness of death reporting can be tested by comparing the age distribution of deaths with that of the population, and the reported deaths can be adjusted by the estimate of completeness prior to smoothing and calculation of life tables. Such a test for completeness indicated that the number of deaths reported by the PGE, after adjustment for omission, was somewhat too high and that the number recorded by the BRSFM as occurring in the 12 months before the survey was substantially too low. After correction, the two sources gave rather similar mortality estimates, though indicating that adult mortality had declined somewhat from 1964-65 to 1973-74, the decline for males being somewhat larger than that for females.

The mortality estimates derived from information on the survival of near relatives were less satisfactory because they were less internally consistent and because of uncertainties about the time period to which they refer. When the reference period of adult female mortality estimates derived from data on survival of mother was taken into account, the estimates were seen to be rather lower than those available from other sources for similar periods. The adult mortality estimates based on adjusted recorded deaths from the PGE were therefore preferred.

Overall Mortality

The final life tables (Tables 26 and 32) show the expectation of life at birth rising from 48.6 to 51.6 for males and from 47.6 to 49.6 for females over the period 1964-65 to 1973-74. Over the same period, expectation of life at age 10 rose from 56.0 to 58.9 for males, and from 53.1 to 55.7 for females. These life tables should probably be regarded as embodying minimum estimates of mortality in Bangladesh, because the methods used are believed to underestimate rather than overestimate.

5 Regional Variation in Fertility and Mortality

Very little information is available on regional variation in fertility and mortality in Bangladesh. The population censuses provide a substantial amount of data on age and sex distributions for geographical subdivisions of the country, but little demographic use can be made of these distributions because of the distortions introduced by internal migration. Of the major demographic surveys, the PGE and NIS provide no regional estimates within Bangladesh, and the BFS sample is too small to provide estimates for the four divisions of the country. Thus the only source of regional estimates of fertility and mortality are the BRSFM and 1974 census data on children ever born by age of mother.

Table 41 shows the average number of children ever born per woman by age group and division from the BRSFM and the 1974 census; the rank of each division with respect to each value is also shown. Although the parity levels recorded by the BRSFM and by the census are not very consistent, the differentials by division, and hence their ranks, are consistent, though they are not very large. It appears that fertility is highest in Rajshahi, closely followed by Khulna; it is somewhat lower in Dacca, and lowest in Chittagong. It should be remembered that parities for older women are almost certainly too low as a result of omission; for this reason, not too much weight should be put on differentials among women

TABLE 41 Average Parity by Age Group and Division, from BRSFM (1974) and 1974 Census: Bangladesh

Parity Measures by Division	Data Source	Age Group of Woman 15-19	20-24	25-29	30-34	35-39	40-44	45-49
Average Parity								
Rajshahi	BRSFM	0.466	2.027	3.635	5.024	5.983	6.291	5.950
	Census	0.618	2.050	3.475	4.797	5.742	5.996	6.165
Khulna	BRSFM	0.399	1.844	3.529	4.979	5.948	6.329	6.196
	Census	0.563	1.983	3.429	4.759	5.738	5.995	6.279
Dacca	BRSFM	0.374	1.789	3.445	5.025	5.946	6.261	6.261
	Census	0.459	1.764	3.193	4.531	5.502	5.875	6.092
Chittagong	BRSFM	0.313	1.748	3.357	4.676	5.592	5.926	5.909
	Census	0.406	1.664	3.038	4.257	5.164	5.411	5.684
Parity Rank								
Rajshahi	BRSFM	1	1	1	2	1	2	3
	Census	1	1	1	1	1	1	2
Khulna	BRSFM	2	2	2	3	2	1	2
	Census	2	2	2	2	2	2	1
Dacca	BRSFM	3	3	3	1	3	3	1
	Census	3	3	3	3	3	3	3
Chittagong	BRSFM	4	4	4	4	4	4	4
	Census	4	4	4	4	4	4	4

over 35, because they may reflect differential degrees of omission rather than real differentials in fertility.

It is interesting to note in passing that fertility in Comilla district, where the Cholera Research Laboratory is situated, is somewhat below the national average, according to the evidence available. The average parity of women aged 30 to 34 was 4.295 in Comilla, some 6 percent below the national average of 4.563. The area of central Bangladesh covered by the Demographic Survey of East Pakistan, on the other hand, had fertility levels similar to the national average; weighting the 1974 census parities for the districts covered by the DSEP by the 1961 district populations gives an average parity for women aged 30 to 34 of 4.452, only 2 percent below the national average.

The only information available on variations in mortality by region comes from the child survival data from the BRSFM. Child mortality estimates were obtained by applying the Trussell procedure (Hill et al., 1981) to the observed proportions of children dead by age group of mother. The results are summarized in Table 42 in the form of average mortality level in the Coale-Demeny "North" family. On the basis of this evidence, there seems to be very little variation by division in the level of child mortality.

TABLE 42 Child Mortality Levels by Division, Estimated from Proportion Dead Among Children Ever Born, BRSFM 1974: Bangladesh

	Mortality Level in Coale-Demeny Model Life Table[a]	
Division	Males	Females
Rajshahi	11.7	11.2
Khulna	11.3	10.8
Dacca	11.1	11.1
Chittagong	11.2	10.7

[a] Obtained as the average of the levels of the mortality estimates derived from the proportion dead among children ever borne by women in the age groups 20-24, 25-29, and 30-34.

6 Population Growth in Bangladesh

The fertility and mortality rates estimated in earlier sections can be used, together with an age distribution, to calculate crude birth and death rates, which in turn imply a rate of natural increase of the population. However, distortions in the reported age distributions would affect the crude rates thus estimated--especially the death rate, since age reporting is apparently worst in the age categories where mortality rates are highest, in early childhood and old age. To minimize this problem, the reported age distributions from the PGE and the BRSFM were smoothed, as described below. Crude birth and death rates were then calculated by applying estimated age-specific fertility and mortality rates to the adjusted age distributions.

The smoothing procedure used was based on the relationships between the cumulated observed age distributions and cumulated stable population age distributions calculated from the composite life tables for 1964-65 and 1974 (Tables 26 and 32), together with an assumed population growth rate of 3 percent. For both cumulated age distributions, the proportions under successive ages--$p^o(a)$ for the observed distribution and $p^m(a)$ for the model distribution-- were transformed using the linearizing transformation

$$\rho a = \log_e \left[\frac{1 + p(a)}{1 - p(a)}\right].$$

For each value of a, the value of b necessary to satisfy the relationship

$$\rho^{o}(a) = b\ \rho^{m}(a)$$

was calculated. The average value of b across all values of a for which b was reasonably constant was then used to obtain smoothed proportions under each age a.

The results produced age distributions rather similar to those observed, as may be seen in Figure 8, which plots the relative differences in the proportions in each five-year age group by sex for both the PGE and the BRSFM age distributions. The proportions in each age group in the smoothed populations are shown in Table 43.

Crude death rates were calculated for the smoothed age distributions by applying to them the age-specific mortality rates implied by the life tables derived earlier (Tables 26 and 32). Crude birth rates were also calculated, the number of births being obtained by applying estimated age-specific fertility rates to the smoothed female age distributions, and the total population being obtained by taking the observed sex ratios of the surveyed populations. (For the PGE, the age-specific fertility rates used were those based on the adjusted CD births for 1964-65, from Table 9; for the BRSFM, they were those derived after adjustment by P/F ratios, from Table 13.) Birth rates by sex were obtained by assuming a sex ratio at birth of 1.05 males per female. Results are shown in Table 44.

The death rate is estimated to have declined by about 1 per 1,000 over the decade and the birth rate to have declined by about 2 per 1,000, allowing the rate of natural increase to fall by about 1 per 1,000. However, the change in the birth rate comes about almost entirely because the PGE age pattern of fertility is younger than that from the BRSFM; had the BRSFM fertility rates been used in calculating the PGE birth rate, the overall birth rate in 1964-65 would have been 50.9 instead of 52.6, and the change over the decade would have been negligible.

The population growth rates shown in Table 44 are extremely high, particularly for the 1964-65 period. Rates estimated in other ways are all significantly lower. Growth of the enumerated Muslim population between 1961 and 1974 was 3.05 percent for males and 3.08 percent for females. The growth rates obtained from the stable population analysis of the 1961 and 1974 Muslim age distributions work out to 2.26 and 2.42 for males and

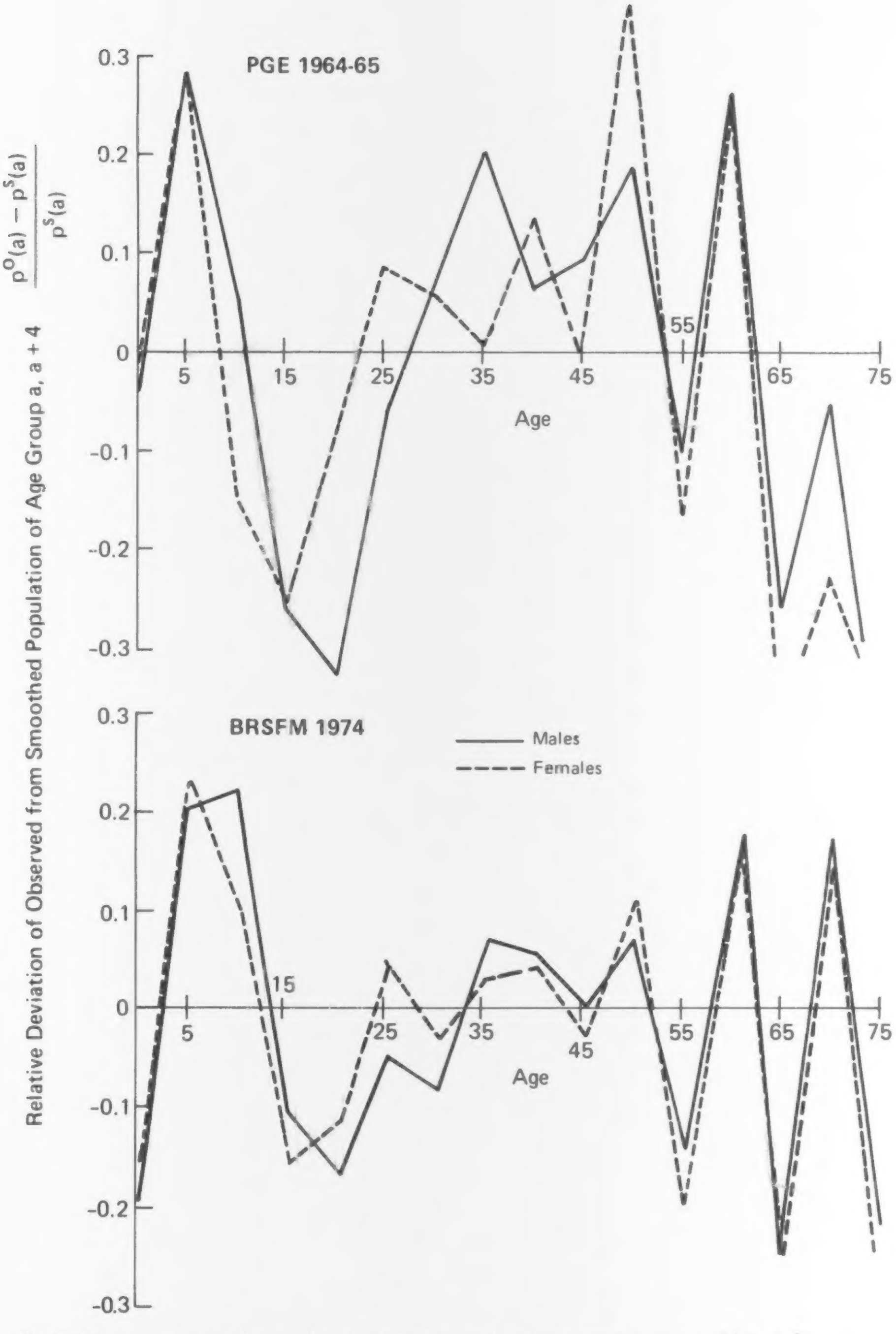


FIGURE 8 Relative deviations of observed age distributions from smoothed age distributions, 1964-65 and 1974: Bangladesh.

TABLE 43 Proportions in Each Age Group by Sex in Smoothed Age Distributions for 1964-65 and 1974: Bangladesh

Age Group	1964-65		1974	
	Males	Females	Males	Females
Under 1	.0412	.0438	.0412	.0437
1-4	.1346	.1439	.1346	.1435
5-9	.1400	.1471	.1390	.1467
10-14	.1189	.1232	.1181	.1227
15-19	.1016	.1039	.1008	.1033
20-24	.0865	.0872	.0859	.0866
25-29	.0734	.0729	.0730	.0725
30-34	.0621	.0606	.0618	.0603
35-39	.0525	.0502	.0523	.0499
40-44	.0441	.0413	.0440	.0412
45-49	.0368	.0337	.0369	.0339
50-54	.0305	.0274	.0307	.0275
55-59	.0247	.0217	.0250	.0221
60-64	.0195	.0167	.0201	.0172
65-69	.0146	.0120	.0153	.0126
70-74	.0099	.0078	.0108	.0085
75-79	.0058	.0043	.0065	.0050
80+	.0033	.0023	.0040	.0028

TABLE 44 Crude Death Rates, Crude Birth Rates, and Rates of Population Growth, 1964-65 and 1974: Bangladesh

	1964-65			1974		
	Males	Females	Total	Males	Females	Total
Crude Birth Rate	52.2	53.0	52.6	49.8	51.0	50.4
Crude Death Rate	18.3	18.0	18.2	16.6	17.1	16.8
Rate of Natural Increase	33.9	35.0	34.4	33.2	33.9	33.6

Note: All rates are per thousand.

2.79 and 2.82 for females. The growth-balance assessment of the age distribution of deaths gave growth rate estimates of 2.92 and 3.06 for males and females, respectively, for 1964-65 and 2.92 and 3.36 for males and females, respectively, for 1974. The smoothing procedure applied to the 1964-65 and 1974 age distributions showed that the male populations were slightly older than stable populations based on the estimated life tables and rates of growth of 3 percent, whereas the female populations were slightly younger, suggesting male growth rates slightly below 3 percent and female growth rates slightly above 3 percent. Between 1964-65 and 1974, both the male and female populations changed slightly in the direction of younger age distributions, relative to the stable population standards, suggesting in both instances a slight increase in the rate of population growth.

There are thus some rather serious inconsistencies between the growth rate estimates obtained by combining fertility and mortality estimates and those available from other sources. For the early 1960s, the possibilities range from 2.3 to 3.4 percent for males and from 2.8 to 3.5 percent for females; for the mid-1970s, the ranges are 2.4 to 3.3 percent for males and 2.8 to 3.4 percent for females. The estimates derived from stable population analysis are implausibly low, particularly for males, falling well below the observed intercensal rate of increase of the Muslim population. The estimates obtained for 1964-65 by combining the fertility and mortality estimates are, on the other hand, implausibly high, the birth rates being excessive. It is also possible that mortality has been somewhat underestimated in both 1964-65 and 1974, tending to inflate the calculated rate of natural increase for both periods.

On the basis of the evidence available, it is not possible to give a definitive figure for the growth rate. It is probable that the growth rate increased slightly between 1964-65 and 1974, with essentially constant fertility and child mortality but some decline in adult mortality. It is also probable that the growth rate of the female population was somewhat greater than that of the male population, despite heavier overall mortality, because of age distribution effects brought about by sex differences in the age pattern of mortality. The growth rate for males was probably in the range of 2.8 to 3.0 percent in the mid-1960s and probably increased to somewhere in the range of 2.9 to 3.2 percent by the mid-1970s; for females, comparable ranges are 2.9 to 3.1 percent and 3.0 to 3.2 percent. The growth rate had probably risen rapidly in the early and mid-1950s, as child mortality declined fairly rapidly. The increase in the growth rate during the late 1950s and early 1960s was probably rather slow and changed at all only as a result of continuing declines in adult mortality.

Glossary

AGE HEAPING A tendency for enumerators or respondents to report certain ages instead of others; also called age preference or digit preference. Preference for ages ending in 0 or 5 is widespread.

AGE PATTERN OF FERTILITY The relative distribution of a set of age-specific fertility rates. It expresses the relative contribution of each age group to total fertility.

AGE RATIO The ratio of the population in a given age group to the average of the populations in the two neighboring age groups, times 100.

AGE-SPECIFIC FERTILITY RATE The number of births occurring during a specified period to women of a specified age or age group, divided by the number of person-years-lived during that period by women of that age or age group. When an age-specific fertility rate is calculated for a calendar year, the number of births to women of the specified age is usually divided by the midyear population of women of that age.

AGE-SPECIFIC MORTALITY RATE The number of deaths occurring during a specified period to persons (usually specified by sex) of a specified age or age group, divided by the number of person-years-lived during that period by the persons of that age or age group. When an age-specific mortality rate is calculated for a calendar year, the number of deaths to persons of the specified age is usually divided by the midyear population of persons of that age. Age-specific mortality rates are generally denoted by $_nM_x$, the annual death rate to persons aged x to x + n.

AGE STANDARDIZATION A procedure of adjustment of crude rates (birth, death, or other rates) designed to reduce the effect of differences in age structure when comparing rates for different populations.

BIRTH HISTORY A report of the number and dates of all live births experienced by a particular woman; see also pregnancy history. The sex of each child, the survival of each child to the date of the interview, and, where pertinent, the date of death are also generally recorded.

BIRTH ORDER The ordinal number of a given live birth in relation to all previous live births of the same woman (e.g., 5 is the birth order of the fifth live birth occurring to the same woman).

BIRTH RATE See crude birth rate.

CHANDRASEKARAN-DEMING TECHNIQUE A procedure to estimate the coverage of two independent systems collecting information about demographic or other events, based on the assumption that the probability of an event being recorded by one system is the same whether or not the event is recorded by the other system. The events from both systems are matched to establish M, the number of events recorded by both systems; U_1, the number recorded only by system 1; and U_2, the number recorded only by system 2. The Chandrasekaran-Deming formula then estimates total events, N, as

$$\hat{N} = M + U_1 + U_2 + \frac{U_1 U_2}{M}.$$

CHILDBEARING AGES The span within which women are capable of bearing children, generally taken to be from age 15 to age 49 or, sometimes, to age 44.

CHILDREN EVER BORN(E) The number of children ever borne alive by a particular woman; synonymous with parity. In demographic usage, stillbirths are specifically excluded.

COHORT A group of individuals who experienced the same class of events in the same period. Thus an age cohort is a group of people born during a particular period, and a marriage cohort is a group of people who married during a particular period. The effects of a given set of mortality or fertility rates are often illustrated by applying them to hypothetical cohorts.

COHORT FERTILITY The fertility experienced over time by a group of women or men who form a birth or a marriage cohort. The analysis of cohort fertility is contrasted with that of period fertility.

CRUDE BIRTH RATE The number of births in a population during a specified period divided by the number of person-years-lived by the population during the same period. It is frequently expressed as births per 1,000 population. The crude birth rate for a single year is usually calculated as the number of births during the year divided by the midyear population.

CRUDE DEATH RATE The number of deaths in a population during a specified period divided by the number of person-years-lived by the population during the same period. It is frequently expressed as deaths per 1,000 population. The crude death rate for a single year is usually calculated as the number of deaths during the year divided by the midyear population.

CUMULATED FERTILITY An estimate of the average number of children ever borne by women of some age x, obtained by cumulating age-specific fertility rates up to age x; also often calculated for age groups.

DEATH RATE See crude death rate.

DE FACTO POPULATION A population enumerated on the basis of those present at a particular time, including temporary visitors and excluding residents temporarily absent. See de jure population.

DE JURE POPULATION A population enumerated on the basis of normal residence, excluding temporary visitors and including residents temporarily absent. See de facto population.

DIGITAL PREFERENCE See age heaping.

EXPECTATION OF LIFE AT BIRTH The average number of years that a member of a cohort of births would be expected to live if the cohort were subject to the mortality conditions expressed by a particular set of age-specific mortality rates. Denoted by the symbol e(o) in life table notation.

FERTILITY HISTORY Either a birth history or a pregnancy history.

FORWARD SURVIVAL A procedure for estimating the age distribution at some later date by projecting forward an observed age distribution. The procedure uses survival ratios, often obtained from model life tables. The procedure is basically a form of population projection without the introduction of new entrants (births) to the population.

GENERAL FERTILITY RATE The ratio of the number of live births in a period to the number of person-years-lived by women of childbearing ages during the period. The general fertility rate for a year is usually calculated as the number of births divided by the number of women of childbearing ages at midyear.

GROSS REPRODUCTION RATE The average number of female children a woman would have if she survived to the end of her childbearing years and if, throughout, she were subject to a given set of age-specific fertility rates and a given sex ratio at birth. This number provides a measure of replacement fertility in the absence of mortality.

GROWTH RATE The increase or decrease of a population in a period divided by the number of person-years-lived by the number of person-years-lived by the population during the same period. The increase in a population is the result of a surplus (or deficit) of births over deaths and a surplus (or deficit) of immigrants over emigrants. (The annual increase is often expressed as a fraction of the total population at the beginning of the year, but this convention has the inconvenient characteristic of not being readily defined for a five-year interval and of being unequal to the difference between the birth rate and the death rate even in the absence of migration.) See also rate of natural increase.

INFANT MORTALITY RATE The number of deaths of children under 1 year of age occurring in the same year; also used in a more rigorous sense to mean the number of deaths that would occur under 1 year of age in a life table with a radix of 1,000, in which sense it is denoted by the symbol $_1q_0$.

LIFE TABLE A listing of the number of survivors at different ages (up to the highest age attained) in a hypothetical cohort subject from birth to a particular set of age-specific mortality rates. The rates are usually those observed in a given population during a particular period of time. The survivors of the radix to age x are generally denoted by l(x). The tabulations commonly accompanying a life table include other features of the cohort's experience: its expectation of life at each age x, denoted by e(x); the probability of surviving from each age x to age x + n, denoted by $_nq_x$; the person-years-lived by the hypothetical cohort as it ages from age x to age x + n, denoted by $_nL_x$ (also equivalent to the population aged x, x + n in a stationary population experiencing a number of births each year equal to the radix of the life table); and the person-years-lived by the hypothetical cohort from age x onward, denoted by $T(x)$.

LOGIT The logit of a proportion p is $1/2 \ln[p/(1 - p)]$. As a linearizing transformation, the logit has been proposed as the basis of a model life table system in which the logit of a probability of dying by age x ($_xq_o$) is related linearly to the logit of a standard probability of dying by age x ($_xq_o^s$) so that

$$\text{logit } ({}_xq_o) = \alpha + \beta \, [\text{logit } ({}_xq_o^s)],$$

where α is a measure of mortality level relative to the standard and β is a parameter that alters the shape of the standard mortality function.

MARITAL FERTILITY Any measure of fertility in which the births (in the numerator) are births to married women and in which the number of person-years-lived (in the denominator) also pertains to married women. In some instances, the designation "married" includes persons in consensual unions.

MEDIAN The value associated with the central member of a set that is ordered by size or some other characteristic expressed in numbers.

MEAN AGE OF CHILDBEARING The average age at which a mortality-free cohort of women bear their children according to a set of age-specific fertility rates.

MEAN AGE OF CHILDBEARING IN THE POPULATION The average age of the mothers of the children born in a population during a year. This measure incorporates the effects of both mortality and the age distribution.

MODEL LIFE TABLE An expression of typical mortality experience derived from a group of observed life tables.

MOVING AVERAGES The successive averaging of two or more adjacent values of a series in order to remove sharp fluctuations.

MYERS INDEX An index of digit preference that essentially sums in turn the population ending in each digit over some age range, often 10-89, expressing the total as a percentage of the total population, and which avoids the bias introduced by the fact that the population is not evenly distributed among all ages by repeating the calculations 10 times, once for each starting digit, and averaging the results. The difference between the average percentage for each digit and the expected value of 10 percent provides a measure of the preference for or avoidance of the digit over the age range considered.

NATURAL FERTILITY The age pattern of marital fertility observed in non-contraceptive populations where reproductive behavior is not affected by the number of children already born.

NET MIGRATION The difference between gross immigration and gross emigration.

NET REPRODUCTION RATE The average number of female children born per woman in a cohort subject to a given set of age-specific fertility rates, a given set of age-specific mortality rates, and a given sex ratio at birth. This rate measures replacement fertility under given conditions of fertility and mortality: it is the ratio of daughters to mothers assuming continuation of the specified conditions of fertility and mortality.

OWN-CHILDREN METHOD A refinement of the reverse-survival procedure for fertility estimation, whereby estimates of age-specific fertility rates for the recent past are obtained by relating mothers to their own children, using information on relationship and other characteristics available from a census or survey.

PARITY See children ever born.

PARTIAL BIRTH RATE The proportion of the population that enters (that is, is "born" into) a given age category in a year. The age categories used are normally open-ended, thus the partial birth rate x+ designates the proportion of the population becoming x years and older.

PARTIAL DEATH RATE The proportion of the population that leaves (that is, "dies" out of) a given age category in a year. See partial birth rate.

PERIOD FERTILITY The fertility experienced during a particular period of time by women from all relevant birth or marriage cohorts; see also cohort fertility.

P/F RATIO METHOD A consistency check for survey information on fertility. Information on recent fertility is cumulated to obtain measures that are equivalent to average parities. Lifetime fertility in the form of reported average parities by age group (P) can then be compared for consistency with the parity-equivalents (F) by calculating the ratio P/F for successive age groups. If certain assumptions about error patterns are met, an improved estimate of fertility can sometimes be obtained by correcting the age pattern of current fertility to agree with the level of lifetime fertility reported by younger women.

PREGNANCY HISTORY A report of the number and the dates of occurrence of all the pregnancies experienced by a particular woman. The outcome of the pregnancy--live birth, stillbirth, fetal death--is also recorded.

RADIX The hypothetical birth cohort of a life table. Common values are 1, 1,000, and 100,000.

RATE OF NATURAL INCREASE The difference between the births and deaths occurring during a given period divided by the number of person-years-lived by the population during the same period. This rate, which specifically excludes changes resulting from migration, is the difference between the crude birth rate and the crude death rate.

RETROSPECTIVE SURVEY A survey that obtains information about demographic events that occurred in a given past period, generally terminating at the time of the survey.

REVERSE PROJECTION See reverse survival.

REVERSE SURVIVAL A technique to estimate an earlier population from an observed population, allowing for those members of the population who would have died according to observed or assumed mortality conditions. It is used as a method of estimating fertility by calculating from the observed number of survivors of a given age x the expected number of births that occurred x years earlier. (In situations for which both fertility and mortality are known or can be reliably estimated, reverse survival can be used to estimate migration.)

ROBUSTNESS A characteristic of estimates that are not greatly affected by deviations from the assumptions on which the estimation procedure is based.

SEX RATIO AT BIRTH The number of male births for each female birth, or male births per 100 female births.

SINGULATE MEAN AGE AT MARRIAGE (SMAM) A measure of the mean age at first marriage, derived from a set of proportions of people single at different ages or in different age groups, usually calculated separately for males and females.

STABLE POPULATION A population exposed for a long time to constant fertility and mortality rates, and closed to migration, establishes a fixed age distribution and constant growth rate characteristic of the vital rates. Such a population, with a constant age structure and constant rate of growth, is called a stable population.

STATIONARY POPULATION A stable population that has a zero growth rate, with constant numbers of births and deaths per year. Its age structure is determined by the mortality rates and is equivalent to the person-years-lived ($_nL_x$) column of a conventional life table.

SURVIVAL RATIO The probability of surviving between one age and another; often computed for age groups, in which case the ratios correspond to those of the person-years-lived function, $_nL_x$, of a life table. Also called survivorship probabilities.

SURVIVORSHIP PROBABILITIES See survival ratio.

SYNTHETIC PARITY The average parity calculated for a hypothetical cohort exposed indefinitely to a set of period age-specific fertility rates.

TOTAL FERTILITY RATE (TFR) The average number of children that would be born per woman if all women lived to the end of their childbearing years and bore children according to a given set of age-specific fertility rates; also referred to as total fertility. It is frequently used to compute the consequence of childbearing at the rates currently observed.

UNITED NATIONS AGE-SEX ACCURACY INDEX An index of age reporting accuracy that is based on deviations from the expected regularity of population size and sex ratio, age group by age group. The index is calculated as the sum of (1) the mean absolute deviation from 100 of the age ratios for males, (2) the mean absolute deviation from 100 of the age ratios for females, and (3) three times the mean of the absolute difference in reported sex ratios from one age group to the next. The United Nations defines age-sex data as "accurate," "inaccurate," or "highly inaccurate" depending on whether the index is less than 20, 20 to 40, or greater than 40.

WHIPPLE'S INDEX A measure of the quality of age reporting based on the extent of preference for a particular target digit or digits. The index essentially compares the reported population at ages ending in the target digit or digits with the population expected on the assumption that population is a linear function of age. For a particular age range, often 23 to 62, the population with ages ending in the target digits is divided by one-tenth of the total population, the result then being multiplied by 100 and divided by the number of different target digits. A value of 100 indicates no preference for those digits, whereas values over 100 indicate positive preference for them.

References

Afzal, M. (1977) Denominator-adjusted PGE fertility and mortality rates for Pakistan and Bangladesh: 1962-65. *Pakistan Development Review* 16(2).

Ahmad, M. (1980) A note on the direct estimation of current fertility level using the Bangladesh Fertility Survey data/WFS, 1976. In M. R. Khan, ed., *Fertility and Mortality Trends in Bangladesh*. Dacca: Bangladesh Institute for Development Studies.

Alam, I., and F. Yusuf (1970) *Some Problems of Matching Vital Events Reports in the Population Growth Estimation Project, Pakistan*. Cento Symposium on Demographic Statistics, Office of United States Economic Coordinator for Cento Affairs, Ankara.

Bangladesh (1977) *1974 Bangladesh Population Census Report: National Volume*. Dacca: Bureau of Statistics, Statistics Division, Ministry of Planning.

Bangladesh (1978) *Bangladesh Fertility Survey 1975: First Report*. Dacca: Population Control and Family Planning Division, Ministry of Health and Population Control.

Bean, L. L., D. M. Farooq, and M. R. Khan (1966) The labour force of Pakistan: A note on the 1961 census. *Pakistan Development Review* 6(4).

Blacker, J. G. C., ed. (1977) *Report on the 1974 Bangladesh Retrospective Survey of Fertility and Mortality*. London: Population Bureau, Ministry of Overseas Development; and Dacca: Census Commission, Statistics Division, Ministry of Planning.

Brass, W. (1964) Uses of census and survey data for the estimation of vital rates. In African Seminar on Vital Statistics. Addis Ababa: United Nations Economic Commission for Africa.

Brass, W. (1971a) A critique of methods for estimating population growth in countries with limited data. In Proceedings of the 38th Session, Bulletin of the International Statistical Institute, Vol. 44, Book 1. Washington, D.C.: International Statistical Institute.

Brass, W. (1971b) On the scale of mortality. In W. Brass, ed. Biological Aspects of Demography. London: Taylor and Francis.

Brass, W. (1975) Methods for Estimating Fertility and Mortality from Limited and Defective Data. An occasional publication, Laboratories for Population Statistics. Chapel Hill, N.C.: University of North Carolina.

Brass, W. (1977) The assessment of the validity of fertility trend estimates from maternity histories. In Proceedings of the International Population Conference. Liege, Belgium: International Union for the Scientific Study of Population.

Brass, W. (1980) A Note on the Time Location of Reports of Maternal Orphanhood. Mimeographed paper, Centre for Population Studies, London School of Hygiene and Tropical Medicine, London.

Brass, W., and K. Hill (1973) Estimating adult mortality from orphanhood. In Proceedings of the International Population Conference. Liege, Belgium: International Union for the Scientific Study of Population.

Brass, W., and H. Rashad (1981) Evaluation of levels and trends in fertility from WFS data: Bangladesh. In M. R. Khan, ed., Fertility and Mortality Trends in Bangladesh. Dacca: Bangladesh Institute for Development Studies.

Chandrasekaran, C., and W. E. Deming (1949) On a method of estimating birth and death rates and the extent of registration. Journal of the American Statistical Association, 44(249).

Cholera Research Laboratory (1978) Demographic Surveillance System--Matlab, Volume 1: Methods and Procedures. Scientific Report No. 9. Dacca: Cholera Research Laboratory.

Chowdhury, M. K., and A. K. Sheikh (1980) Preliminary review of levels and trends of fertility and mortality in Matlab: 1966-77. In M. R. Khan, ed., Fertility and Mortality Trends in Bangladesh. Dacca: Bangladesh Institute for Development Studies.

Coale, A. J., and P. Demeny (1966) Regional Model Life Tables and Stable Populations. Princeton, N.J.: Princeton University Press.

Coale, A. J., and T. J. Trussell (1974) Model fertility schedules: Variations in the structure of childbearing in human populations. Population Index 40(2).

El-Badry, M. A. (1961) Failure of enumerators to make entries of zero: Errors in recording childless cases in population censuses. Journal of the American Statistical Association 56(296).

Feeney, G. (1980) Estimating infant mortality trends from child survivorship data. Population Studies 34(1).

Goldman, N., and V. C. Chidambaram (1980) A Re-Investigation of the P/F Ratio Method. Mimeographed paper, World Fertility Survey, London.

Hill, K. (1977) Estimating adult mortality levels from information on widowhood. Population Studies 31(1).

Hill, K. (1981) Notes on population growth and age structure in Bangladesh, 1951-74. In M. R. Khan, ed., Fertility and Mortality Trends in Bangladesh. Dacca: Bangladesh Institute for Development Studies.

Hill, K., and T. J. Trussell (1977) Further developments in indirect mortality estimation. Population Studies 31(2).

Hill, K., H. Zlotnik, and T. J. Trussell (1981) Demographic Estimation: A Manual of Indirect Techniques. Committee on Population and Demography, Assembly of Behavioral and Social Sciences, National Research Council. Washington, D.C.: National Academy Press.

Hobcraft, J. (1976) Report on Own-Children Data: 1974 Bangladesh Retrospective Survey of Fertility and Mortality. Mimeographed paper, World Fertility Survey, London.

Khan, M. A., and J. G. C. Blacker (1981) Regional variations in fertility and nuptiality in Bangladesh from the 1974 census data. In M. R. Khan, ed., Fertility and Mortality Trends in Bangladesh. Dacca: Bangladesh Institute for Development Studies.

Khan, M. R. (1974) Pattern of external migration to and from Bangladesh, 1901-1961. Bangladesh Economic Review 11(2).

Khan, M. R., ed. (1981) Fertility and Mortality Trends in Bangladesh. Dacca: Bangladesh Institute for Development Studies.

Krotki, K. J. (1965) Population size, growth and age distribution: Fourth release from the 1961 census of Pakistan. Pakistan Development Review 3(2).

Muniruzzaman, A. N. M. (1965) Survey methodology and operational procedures. In Demographic Survey in East Pakistan, 1961-62, Part 1. Dacca: Statistical Survey Research Unit, in collaboration with Institute of Statistical Research and Training, University of Dacca.

Muniruzzaman, A. N. M. (1966a) Basic demographic characteristics. In Demographic Survey of East Pakistan, 1961-62, Part 2, Chapter 1. Dacca: Statistical Survey Research Unit, in collaboration with Institute of Statistical Research and Training, University of Dacca.

Muniruzzaman, A. N. M. (1966b) Field problems: The interview and the response. In Demographic Survey of East Pakistan, 1961-62, Part 3, Chapters 1 and 2. Dacca: Statistical Survey Research Unit, in collaboration with Institute of Statistical Research and Training, University of Dacca.

Obaidullah, M. (1966) On marriage, fertility and mortality. In Demographic Survey of East Pakistan, 1961-62, Part 2, Chapter 2. Dacca: Statistical Survey Research Unit, in collaboration with Institute of Statistical Research and Training, University of Dacca.

Pakistan Institute for Development Economics (PIDE) (1971) Final Report of the Population Growth Estimation Experiment, 1962-65. Karachi: PIDE.

Potter, J. (1977) Problems in using birth history analysis to estimate trends in fertility. Population Studies 31(2).

Preston, S., and K. Hill (1980) Estimating the completeness of death registration. Population Studies 34(2).

Preston, S., and A. Palloni (1978) Fine-tuning Brass-type mortality estimates with data on ages of surviving children. Population Bulletin of the United Nations, No. 10. New York: United Nations.

Preston, S., A. J. Coale, J. Trussell, and M. Weinstein (1980) Estimating the completeness of reporting of adult deaths in populations that are approximately stable. Population Index 46(2).

Rahman, M., M. M. Rahaman, and K. M. S. Aziz (1980) Fertility and mortality in Teknaf. In M. R. Khan, ed., Fertility and Mortality Trends in Bangladesh. Dacca: Bangladesh Institute for Development Studies.

Rahman, S. (1979) Own-Children Estimates of Fertility, Bangladesh 1964-73. Paper submitted to Census Fertility Estimation Working Group. Honolulu: East-West Population Institute, East-West Center.

Schultz, T. P., and J. DaVanzo (1970) Analysis of Demographic Change in East Pakistan: A Study of Retrospective Survey Data. Santa Monica, Calif.: Rand Corporation.

Shaw, D. C. (1970) An Analysis of the Age Structure of Pakistan. Research Document No. 3, International Demographic Center. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Bureau of the Census.

Sirageldin, I., D. Norris, and M. Ahmad (1975) Fertility in Bangladesh: Facts and fancies. Population Studies 29(2).

Sullivan, J. (1972) Models for the estimation of the probability of dying between birth and exact ages of early childhood. Population Studies 25(1).

Trussell, T. J. (1975) A re-estimation of the multiplying factors for the Brass technique for determining childhood survivorship rates. Population Studies 29(1).

United Nations (1967) Manual IV: Methods of Estimating Basic Demographic Measures from Incomplete Data. Population Studies, No. 42. New York: United Nations.

Yusuf, F. (1968) Population Growth Estimation: Studies in Methodology--Matching of Vital Events. Research Report No. 67. Karachi: Pakistan Institute of Development Economics.

Zaba, B., and J. G. C. Blacker (1980) A reconciliation of the data on average parity and current fertility obtained from the Bangladesh Fertility Survey (1975) and the Bangladesh Retrospective Survey of Fertility and Mortality (1974). In M. R. Khan, ed., Fertility and Mortality Trends in Bangladesh. Dacca: Bangladesh Institute for Development Studies.

PUBLICATIONS OF THE COMMITTEE ON POPULATION AND DEMOGRAPHY

Report No. 1	*Estimation of Recent Trends in Fertility and Mortality in the Republic of Korea* (1980)
Report No. 2	*Fertility and Mortality Changes in Thailand, 1950–1975* (1980)
Report No. 3	*Fertility and Mortality Changes in Honduras, 1950–1974* (1980)
Report No. 4	*Age Misreporting and Age-Selective Underenumeration: Sources, Patterns, and Consequences for Demographic Analysis* (1981)
Report No. 5	*Estimation of Recent Trends in Fertility and Mortality in Bangladesh* (1981)

BEST AVAILABLE COPY

BEST AVAILABLE COPY

NRC NAS NAE IOM National Academy Press

The National Academy Press was created by the National Academy of Sciences to publish the reports issued by the Academy and by the National Academy of Engineering, the Institute of Medicine, and the National Research Council, all operating under the charter granted to the National Academy of Sciences by the Congress of the United States.

ISBN 0-309-03139-7